



Lecture SS 2025

## Ass.Prof. Dr. techn. Andreas DEUTSCHMANN-OLEK Univ.-Prof. Dr. techn. Andreas KUGI



NONLINEAR DYNAMICAL SYSTEMS AND CONTROL

#### Nonlinear Dynamical Systems and Control

Lecture SS 2025

Ass.Prof. Dr. techn. Andreas DEUTSCHMANN-OLEK Univ.-Prof. Dr. techn. Andreas KUGI

TU Wien Institut für Automatisierungs- und Regelungstechnik Gruppe für komplexe dynamische Systeme

Gußhausstraße 27–29 1040 Wien Telefon: +43 1 58801 – 37615 Internet: https://www.acin.tuwien.ac.at

 $\ensuremath{\mathbb{C}}$  Institut für Automatisierungs- und Regelungstechnik, TU Wien

# Contents

1	Non	linear S	Systems	1
	1.1	Linear	and Nonlinear Systems	1
	1.2	Satelli	te Control	2
	1.3	Ball of	n Beam	4
	1.4	Positio	oning with Static Friction	7
	1.5	Linear	and Nonlinear Oscillator	11
	1.6	Vehicl	e Maneuvers	12
	1.7	Direct	Current (DC) Machines	13
	1.8	Hydra	ulic Actuator (Double Rod Cylinder)	17
	1.9	Litera	$\operatorname{tur}$	20
2	Dyn	amical	Systems	21
	2.1	Differe	ential Equations	24
		2.1.1	The Concept of Norms	26
		2.1.2	Induced Matrix Norm	29
		2.1.3	Banach Space	31
		2.1.4	Hilbert Space	34
		2.1.5	Existence and Uniqueness	36
		2.1.6	Influence of Parameters	40
	2.2	Litera	$\operatorname{tur}$	43
3	Fun	dament	tals of Lyapunov Theory	44
	3.1	A .	C (	11
		Auton	omous Systems	44
		Auton 3.1.1	Vector Fields	44 44
		Auton 3.1.1 3.1.2	We ctor Fields       Stability of the Equilibrium	44 44 46
		Auton 3.1.1 3.1.2 3.1.3	Vector Fields       Stability of the Equilibrium         Direct (Second) Method of Lyapunov       Stability	<ul><li>44</li><li>44</li><li>46</li><li>46</li></ul>
		Auton 3.1.1 3.1.2 3.1.3 3.1.4	Vector Fields       Stability of the Equilibrium         Direct (Second) Method of Lyapunov       Basin of Attraction	<ul> <li>44</li> <li>44</li> <li>46</li> <li>46</li> <li>51</li> </ul>
		Auton 3.1.1 3.1.2 3.1.3 3.1.4 3.1.5	Vector Fields       Stability of the Equilibrium         Direct (Second) Method of Lyapunov       Stability of Attraction         The Invariance Principle       Stability	<ul> <li>44</li> <li>46</li> <li>46</li> <li>51</li> <li>55</li> </ul>
		Auton 3.1.1 3.1.2 3.1.3 3.1.4 3.1.5 3.1.6	Vector Fields       Stability of the Equilibrium         Direct (Second) Method of Lyapunov       Stability of Attraction         Basin of Attraction       Stability         The Invariance Principle       Stability	44 46 46 51 55 59
		Auton 3.1.1 3.1.2 3.1.3 3.1.4 3.1.5 3.1.6 3.1.7	Vector Fields       Stability of the Equilibrium         Stability of the Equilibrium       Stability of the Equilibrium         Direct (Second) Method of Lyapunov       Stability         Basin of Attraction       Stability         The Invariance Principle       Stability         Linear Systems       Stability         Indirect (First) Method of Lyapunov       Stability	44 46 46 51 55 59 64
	3.2	Auton 3.1.1 3.1.2 3.1.3 3.1.4 3.1.5 3.1.6 3.1.7 Non-a	Vector Fields       Stability of the Equilibrium         Stability of the Equilibrium       Stability of the Equilibrium         Direct (Second) Method of Lyapunov       Stability         Basin of Attraction       Stability         The Invariance Principle       Stability         Indirect (First) Method of Lyapunov       Systems         utonomous Systems       Systems	$\begin{array}{c} 44\\ 44\\ 46\\ 46\\ 51\\ 55\\ 59\\ 64\\ 66\end{array}$
	3.2	Auton 3.1.1 3.1.2 3.1.3 3.1.4 3.1.5 3.1.6 3.1.7 Non-a 3.2.1	Vector Fields       Stability of the Equilibrium         Stability of the Equilibrium       Direct (Second) Method of Lyapunov         Basin of Attraction       The Invariance Principle         Linear Systems       Indirect (First) Method of Lyapunov         utonomous Systems       Linear Systems         Linear Systems       Linear Systems	$\begin{array}{c} 44\\ 44\\ 46\\ 46\\ 51\\ 55\\ 59\\ 64\\ 66\\ 70\\ \end{array}$
	3.2	Auton 3.1.1 3.1.2 3.1.3 3.1.4 3.1.5 3.1.6 3.1.7 Non-a 3.2.1 3.2.2	Vector Fields       Stability of the Equilibrium         Direct (Second) Method of Lyapunov       Stability of Attraction         Basin of Attraction       Stability         The Invariance Principle       Stability         Indirect (First) Method of Lyapunov       Systems         Linear Systems       Systems	$\begin{array}{c} 44\\ 44\\ 46\\ 51\\ 55\\ 59\\ 64\\ 66\\ 70\\ 73\\ \end{array}$
	3.2 3.3	Auton 3.1.1 3.1.2 3.1.3 3.1.4 3.1.5 3.1.6 3.1.7 Non-a 3.2.1 3.2.2 Litera	Vector Fields	<ul> <li>44</li> <li>44</li> <li>46</li> <li>46</li> <li>51</li> <li>55</li> <li>59</li> <li>64</li> <li>66</li> <li>70</li> <li>73</li> <li>77</li> </ul>
4	3.2 3.3 Lyaj	Auton 3.1.1 3.1.2 3.1.3 3.1.4 3.1.5 3.1.6 3.1.7 Non-a 3.2.1 3.2.2 Litera punov-t	Vector Fields       Stability of the Equilibrium         Direct (Second) Method of Lyapunov       Direct (Second) Method of Lyapunov         Basin of Attraction       Direct (Second)         The Invariance Principle       Direct (Second)         Indirect (First) Method of Lyapunov       Direct (Second)         utonomous Systems       Direct (Second)         Linear Systems       Direct (Second)         utonomous Systems       Direct (Second)         Linear Systems       Direct (Second)         Lyapunov-like Theory: Barbalat's Lemma       Direct (Second)         Direct Design       Direct (Second)	44 44 46 46 51 55 59 64 66 70 73 77 <b>78</b>
4	3.2 3.3 <b>Lya</b> 4.1	Auton 3.1.1 3.1.2 3.1.3 3.1.4 3.1.5 3.1.6 3.1.7 Non-a 3.2.1 3.2.2 Litera punov-t Integra	Vector Fields	44 44 46 51 55 59 64 66 70 73 77 <b>78</b> 78

	4.3	Adaptive Control	88
	4.4	PD control law for rigid body systems	94
	4.5	Inverse Dynamics (Computed-Torque)	97
	4.6	Literatur	101
5	Sing	gular Perturbation Theory	102
	5.1	Basic Idea	102
	5.2	Different Time Scales	107
	5.3	Linear Time-Invariant Systems	111
	5.4	Literatur	118
6	Exa	ct Linearization and Flatness	119
	6.1	Input-Output Linearization	119
	6.2	Zero Dynamics	124
	6.3	Input-State Linearization	130
	6.4	Trajectory Tracking Control	135
		6.4.1 Exact feedforward linearization with output stabilization	136
		6.4.2 Exact Input-State Linearisation with State Observer	142
		6.4.3 Trajectory Tracking Control for a Non-Flat Output	149
	6.5	Multi-variable case	155
		6.5.1 Exact Linearization	155
		6.5.2 Flatness	165
	6.6	Literatur	169
Α	Fun	damentals of Differential Geometry	<b>A</b> 1
	A.1	Manifold	A1
	A.2	Tangent Space	A3
	A.3	Cotangent Space	A7
	A.4	Lie Bracket	A10
	A.5	Distribution and Codistribution	A14
	A.6	Frobenius' Theorem	A17
	A.7	Literatur	A19
в	Stat	te Observer Design for Linear Time-Varying Systems	<b>B1</b>
	B.1		B10

# List of Figures

1.1	Rotational motion of a satellite	3
1.2	Beam with rolling ball.	4
1.3	Crane with pivot arm.	6
1.4	Closed kinematic chain.	7
1.5	Spring-mass system with static friction.	8
1.6	Static friction model.	9
1.7	Step response of the linear system.	9
1.8	Position control of a spring-mass system with static friction using a PI	
	controller.	10
1.9	Nonlinear and linear oscillator.	11
1.10	Simple vehicle model.	12
1.11	Equivalent circuit diagram of a separately excited DC machine	13
1.12	Characteristic curves for DC machines.	16
1.13	Equivalent circuit diagram of a series-wound machine	17
1.14	Double rod cylinder with 3/4-way valve	18
2.1	Motion on a sphere	23
3.1	Illustration of the concept of a vector field using the example of the electric	
	field of two point charges.	45
3.2	Vector field of an unstable but attractive point.	47
3.3	Simple electrical system.	48
3.4	Constructing a Lyapunov function.	49
3.5	Regarding the compactness of level sets.	52
3.6	Block diagram of the analyzed dynamic system.	53
3.7	Calculation of the basin of attraction of Figure 3.6.	55
3.8	Simple mechanical system.	56
3.9	Limit points and limit sets.	57
4 1		0.0
4.1	Active vehicle damping system.	86
4.2	Robot with three degrees of freedom	97
5.1	Simulation results of the full and reduced models of the direct current	
	machine.	104
5.2	Cascaded control loop	105
5.3	Block diagram of the linear system (5.14b).	105
5.4	Electrical network.	106
5.5	Quarter-car model.	114
5.6	Reduced quasi-stationary model of a quarter-car.	117
	· · · ·	

6.1	Simple elastically coupled robot arm	133
6.2	Block diagram of the two-degree-of-freedom control system structure	138
6.3	Schematic representation of the single-track model	139
6.4	Tire characteristics (lateral force as a function of slip angle) for different	
	ground conditions.	140
6.5	Block diagram of the exact input-state linearization with state observer	145
6.6	Schematic representation of the magnetic bearing.	145
6.7	Schematic representation of the laboratory experiment Ball-on-Wheel	148
6.8	Schematic representation of the basic structure of an axial piston pump in	
	inclined plate design	153
6.9	Hydraulic equivalent circuit of the axial piston pump with load	153
6.10	Schematic representation of the laboratory helicopter	163
6.11	Schematic representation of a bridge crane	166
A.1	Illustration of the definition of a manifold	A2
A.2	Stereographic projection	A2
A.3	Illustration of the mapping between two manifolds	A6
A.4	Geometric interpretation of the Lie bracket	A11
A.5	The Lie bracket as a commutator.	A14

## **1** Nonlinear Systems

The analysis and design methods for controlling linear systems are by far the most advanced. This is due to the superposition principle, which significantly simplifies the mathematical treatment of this class of dynamical systems. However, physical laws often contain significant nonlinearities. When these can no longer be neglected, one must resort to the methods of nonlinear control engineering.

Due to the *superposition principle*, *local* and *global* properties coincide in linear systems. This is no longer the case for *nonlinear dynamical systems*. If one restricts oneself to local properties in nonlinear systems, often linear methods can still be used by linearizing the system equations. However, if one is interested in global properties, the full nonlinear mathematical model must be examined.

A large class of nonlinear dynamical systems can be described by mathematical models of first-order nonlinear differential equations. For these models, there is no simple tool available for input-output description as in the case of Laplace transformation in linear systems. Therefore, the analysis of such systems is preferably done in state space.

#### 1.1 Linear and Nonlinear Systems

The relationship

$$\dot{\mathbf{x}} = \mathbf{A}\mathbf{x} \tag{1.1}$$

describes a linear, time-invariant, autonomous system of n-th order with lumped parameters. Besides the superposition principle, the system can be characterized by additional properties.

The equilibrium points  $\mathbf{x}_R$  of (1.1) are solutions to the linear system of equations

$$\mathbf{0} = \mathbf{A}\mathbf{x}_R \ . \tag{1.2}$$

In the case where  $det(\mathbf{A}) \neq 0$ , the system has exactly one equilibrium point, namely  $\mathbf{x}_R = \mathbf{0}$ ; otherwise, it has infinitely many equilibrium points.

*Exercise* 1.1. Provide a second-order system (1.1) with infinitely many equilibrium points.

With the transition matrix

$$\mathbf{\Phi}(t) = e^{\mathbf{A}t} = \mathbf{E} + \mathbf{A}t + \mathbf{A}^2 \frac{t^2}{2} + \ldots + \mathbf{A}^n \frac{t^n}{n!} + \ldots$$
(1.3)

the solution of the initial value problem is

$$\mathbf{x}(t) = \mathbf{\Phi}(t)\mathbf{x}_0 \ . \tag{1.4}$$

Lecture Nonlinear Dynamical Systems and Control (SS 2025) ©A. Deutschmann-Olek and A. Kugi, Institut für Automatisierungs- und Regelungstechnik, TU Wien

It is easy to see that  $\mathbf{x}(t)$  satisfies the inequality

$$a_1 \mathrm{e}^{-\alpha_1 t} \le \|\mathbf{x}(t)\| \le a_2 \mathrm{e}^{\alpha_2 t} \tag{1.5}$$

with real numbers  $a_1, a_2, \alpha_1, \alpha_2 > 0$ . That is, a trajectory  $\mathbf{x}(t)$  of the system (1.1) cannot converge to the equilibrium  $\mathbf{x}_R = \mathbf{0}$  in finite time nor grow beyond all bounds in finite time.

These properties do not necessarily hold for a nonlinear, autonomous system of  $n\text{-}\mathrm{th}$  order

$$\dot{\mathbf{x}} = \mathbf{f}(\mathbf{x}) \ . \tag{1.6}$$

The equilibrium points of this system are now solutions to the nonlinear system of equations

$$\mathbf{0} = \mathbf{f}(\mathbf{x}_R) \ . \tag{1.7}$$

No general statement can be made about the solution set  $\mathcal{X}_R$  of (1.7). Thus,  $\mathcal{X}_R$  can consist of exactly one element, a finite number of elements, or an infinite number of elements.

*Exercise* 1.2. Provide a first-order system (1.6) with exactly three equilibrium points.

Nonlinear systems can also converge to the equilibrium state in finite time. Consider the equation

$$\dot{x} = -\sqrt{x}, \qquad x_0 > 0 .$$
 (1.8)

For the solution of the above system, we have

$$x(t) = \begin{cases} \left(\sqrt{x_0} - \frac{t}{2}\right)^2 & \text{for } 0 \le t \le 2\sqrt{x_0} \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$
(1.9)

The solution of a nonlinear system can also grow beyond bounds in finite time. For example, consider the system

$$\dot{x} = 1 + x^2, \qquad x_0 = 0 \tag{1.10}$$

with the solution given by

$$x(t) = \tan(t), \qquad 0 \le t < \frac{\pi}{2}$$
 (1.11)

There is no solution for  $t \geq \frac{\pi}{2}$ .

#### 1.2 Satellite Control

Figure 1.1 shows a communication satellite. If the satellite is considered as a rigid body, its rotational motion can be described by the relationship

$$\mathbf{\Theta}\dot{\mathbf{w}} = -\mathbf{w} \times (\mathbf{\Theta}\mathbf{w}) + \mathbf{M} \tag{1.12}$$

Lecture Nonlinear Dynamical Systems and Control (SS 2025) ©A. Deutschmann-Olek and A. Kugi, Institut für Automatisierungs- und Regelungstechnik, TU Wien

z

O

x

with

$$\mathbf{w} = \begin{bmatrix} \omega_1 \\ \omega_2 \\ \omega_3 \end{bmatrix}, \qquad (1.13a)$$

$$\boldsymbol{\Theta} = \begin{bmatrix} \Theta_{11} & \Theta_{12} & \Theta_{13} \\ \Theta_{12} & \Theta_{22} & \Theta_{23} \\ \Theta_{13} & \Theta_{23} & \Theta_{33} \end{bmatrix}, \qquad (1.13b)$$

$$\mathbf{M} = \begin{bmatrix} M_1 \\ M_2 \\ M_3 \end{bmatrix}$$
(1.13c)

body-fixed frame



Figure 1.1: Rotational motion of a satellite.

 $x_1$ 

Here,  $\mathbf{w}$  denotes the vector of angular velocities,  $\boldsymbol{\Theta}$  the inertia matrix, and  $\mathbf{M}$  the vector of torques. The quantities  $\mathbf{w}, \boldsymbol{\Theta}$ , and  $\mathbf{M}$  are referred to the satellite-fixed coordinate frame  $(0_C, x_1, x_2, x_3)$  at the center of mass  $0_C$ . If the coordinate frame  $(0_C, x_1, x_2, x_3)$ is aligned with the principal axes of inertia of the satellite, we have

$$\mathbf{\Theta} = \begin{bmatrix} \Theta_{11} & 0 & 0\\ 0 & \Theta_{22} & 0\\ 0 & 0 & \Theta_{33} \end{bmatrix},$$
(1.14)

which simplifies the above system to

$$\Theta_{11}\dot{\omega}_1 = -(\Theta_{33} - \Theta_{22})\omega_2\omega_3 + M_1 \tag{1.15a}$$

$$\Theta_{22}\dot{\omega}_2 = -(\Theta_{11} - \Theta_{33})\omega_1\omega_3 + M_2$$
(1.15b)

$$\Theta_{33}\dot{\omega}_3 = -(\Theta_{22} - \Theta_{11})\omega_1\omega_2 + M_3 \tag{1.15c}$$

*Exercise* 1.3. How many fundamentally different equilibrium states can you specify for the satellite (1.15) when  $\mathbf{M} = \mathbf{0}$ ?

#### 1.3 Ball on Beam

A ball with mass  $m_K$  rolls on a pivot-mounted beam (see Figure 1.2). The setup is



Figure 1.2: Beam with rolling ball.

influenced by applying a moment M at the pivot point of the beam. The geometric relationships hold as follows:

$$x_1 = r\cos(\varphi_1) - r_0\sin(\varphi_1) \tag{1.16a}$$

$$x_2 = r\sin(\varphi_1) + r_0\cos(\varphi_1) \tag{1.16b}$$

and

$$\dot{r} = -r_0 \dot{\varphi}_2 .$$
 (1.17)

Neglecting friction forces, the Lagrangian is given by

$$L(\varphi_{1},\dot{\varphi}_{1},r,\dot{r}) = \underbrace{\frac{1}{2}m_{K}\left(\dot{x}_{1}^{2}(\varphi_{1},\dot{\varphi}_{1},r,\dot{r}) + \dot{x}_{2}^{2}(\varphi_{1},\dot{\varphi}_{1},r,\dot{r})\right)}_{\text{translational kinetic energy}} + \underbrace{\frac{1}{2}\left(\Theta_{B}\dot{\varphi}_{1}^{2} + \Theta_{K}(\dot{\varphi}_{1} + \dot{\varphi}_{2})^{2}\right)}_{\text{rotational kinetic energy}} - \underbrace{m_{K}gx_{2}(\varphi_{1},r)}_{\text{potential energy}}$$
(1.18)

with the mass of the ball  $m_K$ , the moment of inertia of the beam  $\Theta_B$ , the moment of inertia of the ball  $\Theta_K = \frac{2}{5}m_K r_0^2$ , and the acceleration due to gravity g.

*Exercise* 1.4. Show that for the moment of inertia of a homogeneous ball with radius  $r_0$ , the following holds:

$$\Theta_K = \frac{2}{5}m_K r_0^2 \; .$$

Using the generalized coordinates r(t) and  $\varphi_1(t)$ , the Euler-Lagrange equations yield the system's equations of motion in the form

$$\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t} \left( \frac{\partial}{\partial \dot{r}} L(\varphi_1, \dot{\varphi}_1, r, \dot{r}) \right) - \frac{\partial}{\partial r} L(\varphi_1, \dot{\varphi}_1, r, \dot{r}) = 0$$
(1.19a)

$$\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t} \left( \frac{\partial}{\partial \dot{\varphi}_1} L(\varphi_1, \dot{\varphi}_1, r, \dot{r}) \right) - \frac{\partial}{\partial \varphi_1} L(\varphi_1, \dot{\varphi}_1, r, \dot{r}) = M .$$
(1.19b)

To simplify the results, it is assumed that the ball is a point mass, so  $r_0 = 0$  and  $\Theta_K = 0$ . Thus, the Lagrangian simplifies to

$$L(\varphi_1, \dot{\varphi}_1, r, \dot{r}) = \frac{1}{2}m_K \dot{r}^2 + \frac{1}{2}m_K r^2 \dot{\varphi}_1^2 + \frac{1}{2}\Theta_B \dot{\varphi}_1^2 - m_K gr\sin(\varphi_1)$$
(1.20)

and the mathematical model becomes

$$\frac{d^2}{dt^2}\varphi_1 = \frac{1}{m_K r^2 + \Theta_B} (M - 2m_K r \dot{r} \dot{\varphi}_1 - gm_K r \cos(\varphi_1))$$
(1.21a)

$$\frac{d^2}{dt^2}r = r\dot{\varphi}_1^2 - g\sin(\varphi_1) .$$
 (1.21b)

The equilibrium positions of this system are given by

$$\varphi_{1,R} = 0 \tag{1.22a}$$

$$M_R = gm_K r_R \tag{1.22b}$$

$$r_R$$
 arbitrary. (1.22c)

*Exercise* 1.5. Replace the rolling ball in Figure 1.2 with a frictionless sliding cube of mass  $m_2$  and edge length l. Provide the Lagrangian function and the equations of motion for this model.

Lecture Nonlinear Dynamical Systems and Control (SS 2025) ©A. Deutschmann-Olek and A. Kugi, Institut für Automatisierungs- und Regelungstechnik, TU Wien



Figure 1.3: Crane with pivot arm.

*Exercise* 1.7. In Figure 1.4, a simple manipulator consisting of five beam elements is depicted. It is a system with two degrees of freedom, where the quantities  $q_1$ and  $q_2$  are introduced as generalized coordinates. This manipulator has the special property that the system of differential equations decouples when a simple geometric relationship is satisfied. That is,  $q_1$  or  $q_2$  is only influenced by  $M_1$  or  $M_2$ . This is particularly convenient for controller design. Such examples are typical mechatronic tasks, as in this case the construction is carried out in such a way that the control task is subsequently simplified. However, knowledge of the mathematical model is required to accomplish this. Manipulators of this type were built, among others, by the company Hitachi under the model designation HPR10II.



Figure 1.4: Closed kinematic chain.

#### 1.4 Positioning with Static Friction

Figure 1.5 shows a mass m sliding on a rough surface subject to the spring force  $F_S = cx$ , the friction force  $F_R$ , and the input force  $F_u$ .

In the friction force model, a distinction is made between *static* and *dynamic models*. In the static model, the friction force  $F_R$  is given as a function of the velocity  $v = \frac{d}{dt}x$ .

As shown in Figure 1.6, the friction force generally consists of a velocity-proportional (viscous) component  $r_v v$ , a Coulomb component (dry friction)  $r_C \operatorname{sign}(v)$ , and a static friction component described by the parameter  $r_H$ . It has also been experimentally observed that the force-velocity curve when entering or leaving the static friction state follows the shape of the dashed curve in Figure 1.6 (Stribeck effect). The velocity  $v_S$  at which the friction force  $F_R$  reaches a minimum is also referred to as the Stribeck velocity. Very often, this behavior is described in the form

$$F_R = r_v v + r_C \operatorname{sgn}(v) + (r_H - r_C) \exp\left(-\left(\frac{v}{v_0}\right)^2\right) \operatorname{sgn}(v)$$
(1.23)

where a reference velocity  $v_0$  is used for the total friction force. Hence, the mathematical model of Figure 1.5 written relative to the relaxed position of the spring  $x_0$  reads

(1) The static friction condition is satisfied, so v = 0 and  $|F_u - cx| \le r_H$ ,

$$\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t}x = 0 \tag{1.24a}$$

$$m\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t}v = 0 \tag{1.24b}$$

Lecture Nonlinear Dynamical Systems and Control (SS 2025) ©A. Deutschmann-Olek and A. Kugi, Institut für Automatisierungs- und Regelungstechnik, TU Wien



Figure 1.5: Spring-mass system with static friction.

(2) The adhesion condition is not fulfilled

$$\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t}x = v \tag{1.25a}$$

$$m\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t}v = F_u - F_R - cx \tag{1.25b}$$

with the friction force  $F_R$  according to (1.23).

When implementing the mathematical model (1.24) and (1.25) in a numerical simulation program like MATLAB/SIMULINK, it must be ensured that the *structural switching* between (1.24) and (1.25) is correctly implemented. For example, SIMULINK offers dedicated blocks to detect zero-crossings of variables and implement the switching of states using the STATEFLOW TOOLBOX.

Combining static friction with an integral controller generally leads to undesirable limit cycles. To demonstrate this, in the next step, a PI controller will be designed as a

Lecture Nonlinear Dynamical Systems and Control (SS 2025) ©A. Deutschmann-Olek and A. Kugi, Institut für Automatisierungs- und Regelungstechnik, TU Wien



Figure 1.6: Static friction model.

position controller for the spring-mass system shown in Figure 1.5 with the input force  $F_u$ . For the design of the PI controller, it is common practice to neglect the Coulomb friction component and the static friction component, i.e.,  $r_H = r_C = 0$ . This results in a simple linear system with position x as the output and force  $F_u$  as the input, with the corresponding transfer function

$$G(s) = \frac{\hat{x}}{\hat{F}_u} = \frac{1}{ms^2 + r_v s + c}$$
(1.26)

If the parameters are chosen as c = 2, m = 1,  $r_C = 1$ ,  $r_v = 3$ ,  $r_H = 4$ , and  $v_0 = 0.01$ , then the PI controller  $R(s) = 4\frac{s+1}{s}$  for the linear system (1.26) leads to the step response of the closed loop shown in Figure 1.7.



Figure 1.7: Step response of the linear system.

Implementing the PI controller on the original model (1.24) and (1.25), we obtain the position and velocity profiles shown in Figure 1.8.

Lecture Nonlinear Dynamical Systems and Control (SS 2025) ©A. Deutschmann-Olek and A. Kugi, Institut für Automatisierungs- und Regelungstechnik, TU Wien

1.5

1

0.5

0

-0.5

 $^{-1}$ 

0

-v

20

Time t in s

40

Position x in m



-2

0

20

Time t in s

40

Figure 1.8: Position control of a spring-mass system with static friction using a PI controller.

 $\frac{-1}{60}$  -1

*Exercise* 1.8. Try to replicate the results of Figure 1.8 in MATLAB/SIMULINK. Consider measures to prevent limit cycles (Dead Zone, Integrator with switchable I component, Dithering, etc.).

*Exercise* 1.9. Determine the Stribeck velocity  $v_S$  for the friction model approach (1.23) with the parameters  $r_C = 1$ ,  $r_v = 3$ ,  $r_H = 4$ , and  $v_0 = 0.01$ .

In addition to static friction models, various dynamic models can be found in the literature. Many of these models are essentially based on a brush-like contact model of two rough surfaces. In the so-called  $LuGre\ model$ , the friction force is calculated in the form

$$F_R = \sigma_0 z + \sigma_1 \frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t} z + \sigma_2 \Delta v , \qquad (1.27)$$

with the relative velocity  $\Delta v$  of the two contact surfaces. The average deflection of the brushes z satisfies the differential equation

$$\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t}z = \Delta v - \frac{|\Delta v|}{\chi}\sigma_0 z \tag{1.28}$$

with

$$\chi = r_C + (r_H - r_C) \exp\left(-\left(\frac{\Delta v}{v_0}\right)^2\right) \,. \tag{1.29}$$

Analogous to the static friction model (see (1.23)),  $r_C$  denotes the coefficient of Coulomb friction,  $r_H$  denotes the static friction, and  $v_0$  denotes a reference velocity. The coefficients  $\sigma_0$ ,  $\sigma_1$ , and  $\sigma_2$  allow parameterization of the friction force model using measurement data. For a constant relative velocity  $\Delta v$ , the static friction force  $(\frac{d}{dt}z = 0)$  is calculated as

$$F_R = \sigma_2 \Delta v + r_C \operatorname{sgn}(\Delta v) + (r_H - r_C) \exp\left(-\left(\frac{\Delta v}{v_0}\right)^2\right) \operatorname{sgn}(\Delta v) .$$
(1.30)

60

Lecture Nonlinear Dynamical Systems and Control (SS 2025) ©A. Deutschmann-Olek and A. Kugi, Institut für Automatisierungs- und Regelungstechnik, TU Wien

It can be seen that (1.30) corresponds to the relationship in (1.23). Therefore, the parameter  $\sigma_2$  in (1.27) corresponds to the parameter  $r_v$  of the viscous friction component in (1.23). The advantage of the dynamic friction model is that no structural switching is required for simulation. However, in general, the entire differential equation system becomes *very stiff*, requiring the use of special integration algorithms.

#### 1.5 Linear and Nonlinear Oscillator

The simplest linear oscillator with an angular frequency of  $\omega_0$  is described by a differential equation system of the form

$$\dot{x}_1 = -\omega_0 x_2 \tag{1.31a}$$

$$\dot{x}_2 = \omega_0 x_1 \tag{1.31b}$$

with the output variable  $x_1$ . A fundamental disadvantage of this oscillator is that disturbances can change the amplitude (see Figure 1.9 left). It is obvious to extend the linear oscillator in a way that the amplitude is "'stabilized"'. One possibility is shown by the following system

$$\dot{x}_1 = -\omega_0 x_2 - x_1 \left( x_1^2 + x_2^2 - 1 \right)$$
(1.32a)

$$\dot{x}_2 = \omega_0 x_1 - x_2 \left( x_1^2 + x_2^2 - 1 \right) .$$
 (1.32b)

The influence of the nonlinear terms can be seen in Figure 1.9 (right).



Figure 1.9: Nonlinear and linear oscillator.

*Exercise* 1.10. Calculate the general solution for the nonlinear oscillator (1.32). Use the transformed variables

$$x_1(t) = r(t)\cos(\varphi(t)) \tag{1.33a}$$

$$x_2(t) = r(t)\sin(\varphi(t)) . \tag{1.33b}$$

#### **1.6 Vehicle Maneuvers**

Figure 1.10 shows a drastically simplified model of a vehicle maneuver. The control variables considered are the rolling speed  $u_1$  and the rotational speed  $u_2$  of the axle.



Figure 1.10: Simple vehicle model.

The corresponding mathematical model is given by

$$\begin{bmatrix} \dot{x}_1 \\ \dot{x}_2 \\ \dot{x}_3 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} -\sin(x_3) \\ \cos(x_3) \\ 0 \end{bmatrix} u_1 + \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix} u_2 .$$
(1.34)

Linearizing the model around an equilibrium point

$$\mathbf{x}_{R} = \begin{vmatrix} x_{1,R} \\ x_{2,R} \\ x_{3,R} \end{vmatrix}, \qquad \mathbf{u}_{R} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}, \qquad (1.35)$$

results in

$$\Delta \dot{\mathbf{x}} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \Delta \mathbf{x} + \begin{bmatrix} -\sin(x_{3,R}) \\ \cos(x_{3,R}) \\ 0 \end{bmatrix} \Delta u_1 + \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix} \Delta u_2 .$$
(1.36)

It can be easily verified that the controllability matrix

$$\mathcal{R}(\mathbf{A}, \mathbf{B}) = \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{B} & \mathbf{A}\mathbf{B} & \mathbf{A}^2\mathbf{B} \end{bmatrix}$$
(1.37)

has rank two. Therefore, every linearized model of the vehicle maneuver around an equilibrium point is uncontrollable. However, from experience, it is known that this may not hold for the original system (or what is your experience with parking?).

## 1.7 Direct Current (DC) Machines

Figure 1.11 shows the equivalent circuit diagram of a separately excited DC machine. The



Figure 1.11: Equivalent circuit diagram of a separately excited DC machine.

corresponding mathematical model can be formulated in the form

$$L_A \frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t} i_A = u_A - R_A i_A - \underbrace{k \psi_F \omega}_{u_{ind}}$$
(1.38a)

$$\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t}\psi_F = u_F - R_F i_F \tag{1.38b}$$

$$\Theta_G \frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t} \omega = \underbrace{k \psi_F i_A}_{M_{el}} - M_L \tag{1.38c}$$

where  $L_A$  is the armature inductance,  $R_A$  is the armature resistance,  $i_F = f(\psi_F)$  is the field current,  $R_F$  is the field circuit resistance,  $\Theta_G$  is the moment of inertia of the DC machine and all rigidly flanged components, and k is the armature circuit constant. The state variables in this case are the armature current  $i_A$ , the linked field flux  $\psi_F$ , and the angular velocity  $\omega$ , while the control variables are the armature voltage  $u_A$ , the field voltage  $u_F$ , and the load torque  $M_L$  acts as a disturbance on the system. This description of the separately excited DC machine already assumes that the following model assumptions have been taken into account:

- The spatially distributed windings can be modeled as concentrated inductances in their respective winding axes,
- the inductances in the armature and field circuits twisted by 90° against each other already indicate a complete decoupling between the armature and field,
- the resistances in the armature and field circuits are constant,
- no iron losses are considered,
- there are no saturation effects in the armature circuit, and
- commutation is assumed to be ideal (no torque ripple).

To classify the steady-state behavior of the DC machine independently of the specific machine parameters, a normalization of (1.38) to dimensionless quantities is carried out. Using the reference values of the nominal angular velocity  $\omega_0$ , the nominal linked field flux  $\psi_{F,0}$ , and

$$u_{A,0} = u_{ind,0} = k\psi_{F,0}\omega_0$$
, (1.39a)

$$i_{A,0} = \frac{u_{A,0}}{R_A} ,$$
 (1.39b)

$$M_{el,0} = k\psi_{F,0}i_{A,0} , \qquad (1.39c)$$

$$u_{F,0} = R_F i_{F,0} \tag{1.39d}$$

(1.38) is then transformed into dimensionless form as

$$\frac{L_A}{R_A} \frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t} \left( \frac{i_A}{i_{A,0}} \right) = \frac{u_A}{u_{A,0}} - \frac{i_A}{i_{A,0}} - \frac{\psi_F}{\psi_{F,0}} \frac{\omega}{\omega_0}$$
(1.40a)

$$\frac{\psi_{F,0}}{u_{F,0}}\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t}\left(\frac{\psi_F}{\psi_{F,0}}\right) = \frac{u_F}{u_{F,0}} - \tilde{f}\left(\frac{\psi_F}{\psi_{F,0}}\right)$$
(1.40b)

$$\frac{\Theta_G \omega_0}{M_{el,0}} \frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t} \left(\frac{\omega}{\omega_0}\right) = \frac{\psi_F}{\psi_{F,0}} \frac{i_A}{i_{A,0}} - \frac{M_L}{M_{el,0}} , \qquad (1.40c)$$

where  $\frac{i_F}{i_{F,0}} = \frac{f(\psi_F)}{i_{F,0}} = \tilde{f}\left(\frac{\psi_F}{\psi_{F,0}}\right)$ . Due to the larger air gap in the armature transverse direction,  $\frac{L_A}{R_A} \ll \frac{\psi_{F,0}}{u_{F,0}}$  and magnetic saturation effects in the armature circuit can generally be neglected. For simplification of notation, all normalized quantities  $\frac{x}{x_0}$  are denoted in the form  $\frac{x}{x_0} = \tilde{x}$  in the following.

For constant input quantities  $u_A$ ,  $u_F$ , and  $M_L$ , the equations for the steady state from (1.40) are given by

$$0 = \tilde{u}_A - \tilde{\iota}_A - \tilde{\psi}_F \tilde{\omega} \tag{1.41a}$$

$$0 = \tilde{u}_F - \tilde{f}\left(\tilde{\psi}_F\right) \tag{1.41b}$$

$$0 = \tilde{\psi}_F \tilde{\imath}_A - \tilde{M}_L . \tag{1.41c}$$

Considering the normalized flux  $\tilde{\psi}_F$  as an independent input quantity - which can always be calculated from  $\tilde{u}_F$  via (1.41b) in the steady state - the following relationships can be specified for the steady state of the separately excited DC machine

$$\tilde{\imath}_A = \frac{1}{\tilde{\psi}_F} \tilde{M}_L , \qquad (1.42a)$$

$$\tilde{\omega} = \frac{1}{\tilde{\psi}_F} \tilde{u}_A - \frac{1}{\tilde{\psi}_F^2} \tilde{M}_L \tag{1.42b}$$

It should be noted that the flux  $\psi_F$  is limited by iron saturation in the stator circuit, which is why  $\psi_{F,0}$  can always be set in such a way that approximately in the entire operating range the following holds

$$\tilde{\psi}_F = \frac{\psi_F}{\psi_{F,0}} \le 1 . \tag{1.43}$$

*Exercise* 1.11. Show that in the case of a constant excitation DC machine  $\psi_F = \psi_{F,0}$  the mathematical model (1.38) is linear.

There is a distinction between armature control and field control in separately excited DC machines. In armature control, the excitation flux is set as in the case of a constant excitation DC machine  $\psi_F = \psi_{F,0}$ , and the control of the angular velocity  $\omega$  is done through the armature circuit voltage  $u_A$ .

Lecture Nonlinear Dynamical Systems and Control (SS 2025) ©A. Deutschmann-Olek and A. Kugi, Institut für Automatisierungs- und Regelungstechnik, TU Wien

*Exercise* 1.12. Draw the steady-state characteristics of (1.42) for  $\tilde{\psi}_F = 1$  with  $\tilde{u}_A$  as a parameter ( $\tilde{u}_A = -1.0, -0.5, 0.5, 1.0$ ) in the range  $-0.5 \leq \tilde{M}_L \leq 0.5$ .

In contrast, in field control, the armature voltage is operated at the nominal value  $u_A = \pm u_{A,0}$ , and the speed control is done through the excitation voltage  $u_F$  by weakening the excitation flux in the range  $\tilde{\psi}_{F,\min} \leq \tilde{\psi}_F \leq 1$ . Setting  $\tilde{u}_A = 1$  in (1.42), the steady-state characteristics shown in Figure 1.12 are obtained. The maximum achievable angular velocity  $\tilde{\omega}_{\max}$  for a constant load torque  $\tilde{M}_L$  is obtained from (1.42) with  $\tilde{u}_A = 1$  through the relationship

$$\frac{\mathrm{d}\tilde{\omega}}{\mathrm{d}\tilde{\psi}_F} = -\frac{1}{\tilde{\psi}_F^2} \left( 1 - \frac{2}{\tilde{\psi}_F} \tilde{M}_L \right) = 0 \tag{1.44}$$

in the form

$$\tilde{\psi}_{F,\min} = 2\tilde{M}_L ,$$
(1.45a)

$$\tilde{\omega}_{\max} = \frac{1}{4\tilde{M}_L} \ . \tag{1.45b}$$

It can be seen from (1.45) that for a given constant load torque  $\tilde{M}_L$ , the lower limit of the flux is given by  $\tilde{\psi}_{F,\min} = 2\tilde{M}_L$ .



Figure 1.12: Characteristic curves for DC machines.

The left image of Figure 1.12 shows, among other things, that reducing the flux  $\psi_F$  depending on the load torque  $\tilde{M}_L$  does not necessarily lead to an increase in the angular velocity  $\tilde{\omega}$ . Therefore, in practice, a combination of armature and field control is usually chosen - namely, in a way that the angular velocity is controlled by the armature voltage  $u_A$  up to the nominal value of angular velocity  $\omega_0$  and the excitation flux  $\psi_F$  is maintained at its nominal value  $\psi_{F,0}$ , and only when the armature voltage  $u_{A,0}$  is reached, further increase in angular velocity is achieved through field weakening.

*Exercise* 1.13. Figure 1.13 shows the equivalent circuit diagram of a series-wound machine, which is very commonly used in traction drives. Any external resistances in the armature circuit are added to the armature resistance  $R_A$ , and the adjustable

resistance  $R_P$  is used for field weakening. Provide a mathematical model of the series-wound machine and consider how the resistance  $R_P$  affects the steady-state behavior.



Figure 1.13: Equivalent circuit diagram of a series-wound machine.

### **1.8 Hydraulic Actuator (Double Rod Cylinder)**

Figure 1.14 shows a double rod cylinder controlled by a 3/4-way valve with zero overlap. It should be noted that this configuration also includes the very common case of a doubleacting cylinder with a single piston rod (differential cylinder). Here,  $x_k$  denotes the piston position,  $V_{0,1}$  and  $V_{0,2}$  are the volumes of the two cylinder chambers for  $x_k = 0$ ,  $A_1$  and  $A_2$  describe the effective piston areas,  $m_k$  is the sum of all moving masses,  $q_1$  and  $q_2$ denote the flow from the control valve to the cylinder and from the cylinder to the control valve, respectively,  $q_{int}$  is the internal leakage oil flow, and  $q_{ext,1}$  and  $q_{ext,2}$  describe the external leakage oil flows. In general, the density of oil  $\rho_{oil}$  is a function of pressure p and temperature T. The temperature influence will be neglected further, and the isothermal bulk modulus  $\beta_T$  will be used as a constitutive equation with

$$\frac{1}{\beta_T} = \frac{1}{\rho_{oil}} \left(\frac{\partial \rho_{oil}}{\partial p}\right)_{T = \text{ const.}}$$
(1.46)

The continuity equations for the two cylinder chambers are

$$\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t}(\rho_{oil}(p_1)(V_{0,1} + A_1 x_k)) = \rho_{oil}(p_1)(q_1 - q_{int} - q_{ext,1})$$
(1.47a)

$$\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t}(\rho_{oil}(p_2)(V_{0,2} - A_2 x_k)) = \rho_{oil}(p_2)(q_{int} - q_{ext,2} - q_2)$$
(1.47b)

Lecture Nonlinear Dynamical Systems and Control (SS 2025) ©A. Deutschmann-Olek and A. Kugi, Institut für Automatisierungs- und Regelungstechnik, TU Wien



Figure 1.14: Double rod cylinder with 3/4-way valve.

with the cylinder pressures  $p_1$  and  $p_2$ . Since the internal and external leakage oil flows  $q_{int}$ ,  $q_{ext,1}$ , and  $q_{ext,2}$  are generally laminar, there is a linear relationship between leakage oil flow and pressure drop. Using relation (1.46), equation (1.47) simplifies to

$$\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t}p_1 = \frac{\beta_T}{(V_{0,1} + A_1 x_k)} \left(q_1 - A_1 \frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t} x_k - C_{int}(p_1 - p_2) - C_{ext,1} p_1\right)$$
(1.48a)

$$\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t}p_2 = \frac{\beta_T}{(V_{0,2} - A_2 x_k)} \left( -q_2 + A_2 \frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t} x_k + C_{int}(p_1 - p_2) - C_{ext,2} p_2 \right)$$
(1.48b)

with the laminar leakage coefficients  $C_{int}$ ,  $C_{ext,1}$ , and  $C_{ext,2}$ . For a 3/4-way value with zero overlap, the flows  $q_1$  and  $q_2$  are calculated as

$$q_1 = K_{v,1}\sqrt{p_S - p_1} \operatorname{sg}(x_s) - K_{v,2}\sqrt{p_1 - p_T} \operatorname{sg}(-x_s)$$
(1.49a)

$$q_2 = K_{v,2}\sqrt{p_2 - p_T} \operatorname{sg}(x_s) - K_{v,1}\sqrt{p_S - p_2} \operatorname{sg}(-x_s)$$
(1.49b)

with the tank pressure  $p_T$ , the supply pressure  $p_S$ , the control spool position  $x_s$ , the function  $sg(x_s) = x_s$  for  $x_s \ge 0$  and  $sg(x_s) = 0$  for  $x_s < 0$ , and the valve coefficients  $K_{v,i} = C_d A_{v,i} \sqrt{2/\rho_{oil}}$ , i = 1, 2. Here, the term  $A_{v,i} x_s$  denotes the orifice area and  $C_d$  denotes the flow coefficient ( $C_d \approx 0.6 - 0.8$ , depending on the geometry of the control edge, Reynolds number, flow direction, etc).

Lecture Nonlinear Dynamical Systems and Control (SS 2025) ©A. Deutschmann-Olek and A. Kugi, Institut für Automatisierungs- und Regelungstechnik, TU Wien

Neglecting the dynamics of the control valve and considering the control valve position  $x_s$  as an input to the system, a mathematical model for Figure 1.14 is obtained in the form

$$\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t}p_1 = \frac{\beta_T}{(V_{0,1} + A_1 x_k)}(q_1 - A_1 v_k - C_{int}(p_1 - p_2) - C_{ext,1}p_1)$$
(1.50a)

$$\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t}p_2 = \frac{\beta_T}{(V_{0,2} - A_2 x_k)} (-q_2 + A_2 v_k + C_{int}(p_1 - p_2) - C_{ext,2} p_2)$$
(1.50b)

$$\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t}x_k = v_k \tag{1.50c}$$

$$\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t}v_k = \frac{1}{m_k}(A_1p_1 - A_2p_2 - d_kv_k - c_kx_k)$$
(1.50d)

with  $q_1$  and  $q_2$  from (1.49).

#### 1.9 Literatur

- [1.1] C. Canudas de Wit, H. Olsson, K. J. Åström, and P. Lischinsky, "A New Model for Control of Systems with Friction," *IEEE Transactions on Automatic Control*, vol. 40, no. 3, pp. 419–425, Mar. 1995.
- [1.2] W. Leonhard, Control of Electrical Drives. Springer, Berlin: Dover Publications, 1990.
- [1.3] H. E. Merritt, Hydraulic Control Systems. New York, USA: John Wiley & Sons, 1967.
- [1.4] H. Murrenhoff, Grundlagen der Fluidtechnik. Aachen, Germany: Shaker, 2001.
- [1.5] G. Pfaff, Regelung elektrischer Antriebe I. München: Oldenbourg, 1990.
- [1.6] M. W. Spong, *Robot Dynamics and Control*. New York: John Wiley & Sons, 1989.

## 2 Dynamical Systems

A dynamical system (without input) allows the description of the change of certain points (elements of a suitable set  $\mathcal{X}$ ) in time t. In control engineering, these points are given by the state  $\mathbf{x}(t)$  of the system. If we choose the set of states as  $\mathcal{X} = \mathbb{R}^n$ , then an autonomous dynamical system is a mapping

$$\mathbf{\Phi}_t(\mathbf{x}): \mathbb{R}^n \times \mathbb{R} \to \mathbb{R}^n \tag{2.1}$$

with

$$\mathbf{x}(t) = \mathbf{\Phi}_t(\mathbf{x}_0) \ . \tag{2.2}$$

From the relationship

$$\mathbf{x}_0 = \mathbf{\Phi}_0(\mathbf{x}_0) \tag{2.3}$$

it follows that  $\Phi_0$  must be the identity mapping I with  $\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{I}(\mathbf{x})$ . From the relationships

$$\mathbf{x}(t) = \mathbf{\Phi}_t(\mathbf{x}_0) \tag{2.4a}$$

$$\mathbf{x}(s+t) = \mathbf{\Phi}_s(\mathbf{x}(t)) \tag{2.4b}$$

$$\mathbf{x}(s+t) = \mathbf{\Phi}_{s+t}(\mathbf{x}_0) \tag{2.4c}$$

we now have

$$\mathbf{x}(s+t) = \mathbf{\Phi}_s(\mathbf{\Phi}_t(\mathbf{x}_0)) = \mathbf{\Phi}_{s+t}(\mathbf{x}_0)$$
(2.5)

or

$$\mathbf{\Phi}_s \circ \mathbf{\Phi}_t = \mathbf{\Phi}_{s+t} , \qquad (2.6)$$

where  $\circ$  denotes the composition of the mappings  $\Phi_s$  and  $\Phi_t$ . By exchanging the order in the above considerations, we obtain

$$\mathbf{\Phi}_{s+t} = \mathbf{\Phi}_s \circ \mathbf{\Phi}_t = \mathbf{\Phi}_t \circ \mathbf{\Phi}_s , \qquad (2.7)$$

justifying the notation  $\Phi_{s+t}$ .

*Exercise* 2.1. Let  $\mathbf{a}(\mathbf{x}) : \mathbb{R}^n \to \mathbb{R}^n$  and  $\mathbf{b}(\mathbf{x}) : \mathbb{R}^n \to \mathbb{R}^n$  be two linear mappings from  $\mathbb{R}^n$  to itself. Is the composition  $(\mathbf{a} \circ \mathbf{b})(\mathbf{x}) = \mathbf{a}(\mathbf{b}(\mathbf{x}))$  again a linear mapping? Does  $\mathbf{a} \circ \mathbf{b} = \mathbf{b} \circ \mathbf{a}$  hold?

In other words, are linear mappings commutative with respect to composition? The linear mappings  $\mathbf{a}$  and  $\mathbf{b}$  are given by the matrices  $\mathbf{A}$  and  $\mathbf{B}$  with  $\mathbf{y} = \mathbf{A}\mathbf{x}$  and  $\mathbf{y} = \mathbf{B}\mathbf{x}$ . What are the matrix representations of the above compositions?

Furthermore, it is assumed that  $\Phi_t(\mathbf{x})$  is a (continuously) differentiable mapping with respect to  $\mathbf{x}$ .

**Definition 2.1** (Dynamical System). A (autonomous) dynamical system is a  $C^1$  (continuously differentiable) mapping

$$\mathbf{\Phi}_t(\mathbf{x}): \mathbb{R}^n \times \mathbb{R} \to \mathbb{R}^n , \qquad (2.8)$$

that satisfies the following conditions:

- (1)  $\Phi_0$  is the identity mapping **I**, and
- (2) the composition  $\Phi_s(\Phi_t(\mathbf{x}))$  satisfies the relations

$$\Phi_{s+t} = \Phi_s \circ \Phi_t = \Phi_t \circ \Phi_s \tag{2.9}$$

for all  $s, t \in \mathbb{R}$ .

Note that from the above definition, it immediately follows

$$\mathbf{\Phi}_{-s}(\mathbf{\Phi}_s(\mathbf{x}_0)) = \mathbf{\Phi}_0(\mathbf{x}_0) = \left(\mathbf{\Phi}_s^{-1} \circ \mathbf{\Phi}_s\right)(\mathbf{x}_0) = \mathbf{x}_0$$
(2.10)

The mapping  $\Phi_t$  thus satisfies the following conditions:

- (1)  $\Phi_0 = \mathbf{I}$ ,
- (2)  $\mathbf{\Phi}_{s+t} = \mathbf{\Phi}_s \circ \mathbf{\Phi}_t = \mathbf{\Phi}_t \circ \mathbf{\Phi}_s$ , and
- (3)  $\Phi_s^{-1} = \Phi_{-s}$ .

A dynamical system according to Definition 2.1 is closely related to a system of differential equations. From

$$\dot{\mathbf{x}}(t) = \lim_{\Delta t \to 0} \frac{1}{\Delta t} (\mathbf{\Phi}_{t+\Delta t}(\mathbf{x}_0) - \mathbf{\Phi}_t(\mathbf{x}_0)) = \left( \lim_{\Delta t \to 0} \frac{1}{\Delta t} (\mathbf{\Phi}_{\Delta t} - \mathbf{I}) \right) \circ \mathbf{\Phi}_t(\mathbf{x}_0) = \frac{\partial}{\partial t} \mathbf{\Phi}_t \Big|_{t=0} \circ \mathbf{\Phi}_t(\mathbf{x}_0) = \frac{\partial}{\partial t} \mathbf{\Phi}_t \Big|_{t=0} (\mathbf{x}(t))$$
(2.11)

it follows

$$\dot{\mathbf{x}}(t) = \mathbf{f}(\mathbf{x}(t)), \qquad \mathbf{f}(\mathbf{x}(t)) = \left. \frac{\partial}{\partial t} \mathbf{\Phi}_t \right|_{t=0} (\mathbf{x}(t)) \ .$$
 (2.12)

Thus, a dynamical system also satisfies the relationship

(4)  $\frac{\partial}{\partial t} \Phi_t \Big|_{t=0} (\mathbf{x}(t)) = \mathbf{f}(\mathbf{x}(t))$  with  $\mathbf{x}(t) = \Phi_t(\mathbf{x}_0)$ . The mapping  $\Phi_t$  is also called the *flow* of the differential equation system (2.12).

*Exercise* 2.2. Choose the specific dynamical system  $\mathbf{x}(t) = e^{\mathbf{A}t}\mathbf{x}_0$  or  $\mathbf{\Phi}_t(\mathbf{x}) = e^{\mathbf{A}t}\mathbf{x}$ . Now interpret the properties of the transition matrix according to points (1) - (3) of a dynamical system. What does the corresponding differential equation system look like?

As an example, the motion of a point  $\mathbf{x}_0 \in \mathbb{R}^3$  on a unit sphere with the origin as the center is considered (see Figure 2.1). As an approach for a (continuous) transformation that maps points on the unit sphere back to themselves, the form

$$\mathbf{x}(t) = \mathbf{D}(t, \mathbf{x}_0) \mathbf{x}_0 = \mathbf{\Phi}_t(\mathbf{x}_0)$$
(2.13)

is chosen with a  $(3 \times 3)$  matrix **D**. Due to  $\mathbf{x}_0^T \mathbf{x}_0 = \mathbf{x}^T(t)\mathbf{x}(t) = 1$ , the conditions

$$\mathbf{D}^{\mathrm{T}}\mathbf{D} = \mathbf{D}\mathbf{D}^{\mathrm{T}} = \mathbf{I} \tag{2.14}$$

must be satisfied.

*Exercise* 2.3. Show the validity of (2.14).



Figure 2.1: Motion on a sphere.

For the mapping in Figure 2.1 to describe a dynamical system, the conditions

(1)  $\mathbf{D}(0, \mathbf{x}) = \mathbf{I}$  and

(2) 
$$\mathbf{D}(s+t,\mathbf{x}) = \mathbf{D}(s,\mathbf{D}(t,\mathbf{x})\mathbf{x})\mathbf{D}(t,\mathbf{x}) = \mathbf{D}(t,\mathbf{D}(s,\mathbf{x})\mathbf{x})\mathbf{D}(s,\mathbf{x})$$

must hold. Furthermore, it is known that a dynamical system is associated with a system of differential equations of the form

$$\dot{\mathbf{x}} = \left. \frac{\partial}{\partial t} (\mathbf{D}(t, \mathbf{x}) \mathbf{x}) \right|_{t=0} = \left. \frac{\partial}{\partial t} \mathbf{D}(t, \mathbf{x}) \right|_{t=0} \mathbf{x}$$
(2.15)

Additionally, the relationship

$$\mathbf{W} = \left(\frac{\partial}{\partial t}\mathbf{D}(t, \mathbf{x}_{0})\right)\mathbf{D}^{\mathrm{T}}(t, \mathbf{x}_{0})$$

$$= \lim_{\Delta t \to 0} \frac{1}{\Delta t} (\mathbf{D}(t + \Delta t, \mathbf{x}_{0}) - \mathbf{D}(t, \mathbf{x}_{0}))\mathbf{D}^{\mathrm{T}}(t, \mathbf{x}_{0})$$
using condition (2):
$$= \lim_{\Delta t \to 0} \frac{1}{\Delta t} (\mathbf{D}(\Delta t, \mathbf{D}(t, \mathbf{x}_{0})\mathbf{x}_{0})\mathbf{D}(t, \mathbf{x}_{0}) - \mathbf{D}(t, \mathbf{x}_{0}))\mathbf{D}^{\mathrm{T}}(t, \mathbf{x}_{0})$$

$$= \lim_{\Delta t \to 0} \frac{1}{\Delta t} (\mathbf{D}(\Delta t, \mathbf{D}(t, \mathbf{x}_{0})\mathbf{x}_{0}) - \mathbf{I})\mathbf{D}(t, \mathbf{x}_{0})\mathbf{D}^{\mathrm{T}}(t, \mathbf{x}_{0})$$

$$= \frac{\partial}{\partial t} \mathbf{D}(t, \mathbf{x})\Big|_{t=0}.$$
(2.16)

holds. By using (2.14), it is immediately clear that **W** is skew-symmetric, because

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial t} \left( \mathbf{D} \mathbf{D}^{\mathrm{T}} \right) = \left( \frac{\partial}{\partial t} \mathbf{D} \right) \mathbf{D}^{\mathrm{T}} + \mathbf{D} \left( \frac{\partial}{\partial t} \mathbf{D}^{\mathrm{T}} \right) = \mathbf{0}$$
(2.17)

or

$$\left(\frac{\partial}{\partial t}\mathbf{D}\right)\mathbf{D}^{\mathrm{T}} = -\mathbf{D}\left(\frac{\partial}{\partial t}\mathbf{D}^{\mathrm{T}}\right).$$
(2.18)

A skew-symmetric matrix  $\mathbf{W}$  generally has the form

$$\mathbf{W}(\mathbf{x}) = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & -\omega_3(\mathbf{x}) & \omega_2(\mathbf{x}) \\ \omega_3(\mathbf{x}) & 0 & -\omega_1(\mathbf{x}) \\ -\omega_2(\mathbf{x}) & \omega_1(\mathbf{x}) & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$
(2.19)

and thus the differential equation (2.15) can be written as follows

$$\dot{\mathbf{x}} = \mathbf{W}\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{w}(\mathbf{x}) \times \mathbf{x} \tag{2.20}$$

with  $\mathbf{w}^{\mathrm{T}}(\mathbf{x}) = [\omega_1(\mathbf{x}), \, \omega_2(\mathbf{x}), \, \omega_3(\mathbf{x})]$ . This means that when a dynamical system describes the motion of a point on a sphere, the differential notation yields the cross product.

#### 2.1 Differential Equations

By a dynamical system according to Definition 2.1, a system of differential equations is defined. The investigation of when a differential equation of the form

$$\dot{\mathbf{x}} = \mathbf{f}(\mathbf{x}) \tag{2.21}$$

describes a dynamical system in the above sense will be examined subsequently. However, in a first step, some basic concepts will be explained.

Lecture Nonlinear Dynamical Systems and Control (SS 2025) ©A. Deutschmann-Olek and A. Kugi, Institut für Automatisierungs- und Regelungstechnik, TU Wien

**Definition 2.2** (Linear Vector Space). A non-empty set  $\mathcal{X}$  is called a linear vector space over a (scalar) field K with the binary operations  $+ : \mathcal{X} \times \mathcal{X} \to \mathcal{X}$  (addition) and  $\cdot : K \times \mathcal{X} \to \mathcal{X}$  (scalar multiplication), if the following vector space axioms are satisfied:

(1) The set  $\mathcal{X}$  with the operation + forms a commutative group, i.e., for  $\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{y}, \mathbf{z} \in \mathcal{X}$ , the following holds:

(1)	$\mathbf{x} + \mathbf{y} = \mathbf{y} + \mathbf{x}$	Commutativity	(2.22)
(2)	$\mathbf{x} + (\mathbf{y} + \mathbf{z}) = (\mathbf{x} + \mathbf{y}) + \mathbf{z}$	Associativity	(2.23)
(3)	$0 + \mathbf{x} = \mathbf{x}$	Identity element	(2.24)
(4)	$\mathbf{x} + (-\mathbf{x}) = 0$	Inverse element	(2.25)

(2) The multiplication  $\cdot$  by a scalar  $a, b \in K$  satisfies the laws:

(1)	$a(\mathbf{x} + \mathbf{y}) = a\mathbf{x} + a\mathbf{y}$	Distributivity	(2.26)
(2)	$(a+b)\mathbf{x} = a\mathbf{x} + b\mathbf{x}$	Distrivutivity	(2.27)
(3)	$(ab)\mathbf{x} = a(b\mathbf{x})$	Compativility	(2.28)
(4)	$1\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{x},  0\mathbf{x} = 0$		(2.29)

**Definition 2.3** (Linear Subspace). If  $\mathcal{X}$  is a linear vector space over the field K, then a subset  $\mathcal{S}$  of  $\mathcal{X}$  is a linear subspace if  $\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{y} \in \mathcal{S} \Rightarrow a\mathbf{x} + b\mathbf{y} \in \mathcal{S}$  for all scalars a,  $b \in K$ .

An expression of the form

$$\sum_{j=1}^{n} a_j \mathbf{x}_j = a_1 \mathbf{x}_1 + a_2 \mathbf{x}_2 + \ldots + a_n \mathbf{x}_n$$
(2.30)

with  $\mathcal{X} \ni \mathbf{x}_j$ ,  $j = 1, \ldots, n$  and scalars  $K \ni a_j$ ,  $j = 1, \ldots, n$  is called a *linear combination* of the vectors  $\mathbf{x}_1, \mathbf{x}_2, \ldots, \mathbf{x}_n \in \mathcal{X}$ . If there exist scalars  $a_j$ ,  $j = 1, \ldots, n$ , not all identically zero, such that the linear combination  $\sum_{j=1}^n a_j \mathbf{x}_j = \mathbf{0}$  holds, then the vectors  $\mathbf{x}_1, \mathbf{x}_2, \ldots, \mathbf{x}_n \in \mathcal{X}$ are *linearly dependent*. If apart from the trivial solution  $a_j = 0$ ,  $j = 1, \ldots, n$ , no scalars exist that satisfy this condition, then the vectors  $\mathbf{x}_1, \mathbf{x}_2, \ldots, \mathbf{x}_n \in \mathcal{X}$  are called *linearly independent*. For the set of all linear combinations of vectors in a non-empty subset  $\mathcal{M}$  of  $\mathcal{X}$ , we denote span( $\mathcal{M}$ ). The *subspace spanned by*  $\mathcal{M}$  (also known as linear hull) is the smallest subspace according to Definition 2.3 that contains  $\mathcal{M}$ , i.e., all its elements can be represented as linear combinations of elements from  $\mathcal{M}$ .

If a linear vector space  $\mathcal{X}$  is spanned by a finite number n of linearly independent vectors, then  $\mathcal{X}$  has dimension n and is called *finite-dimensional*. If no finite number exists,  $\mathcal{X}$  is *infinite-dimensional*.

Lecture Nonlinear Dynamical Systems and Control (SS 2025) ©A. Deutschmann-Olek and A. Kugi, Institut für Automatisierungs- und Regelungstechnik, TU Wien

#### 2.1.1 The Concept of Norms

Examples of linear vector spaces include vectors in  $\mathbb{R}^n$ ,  $n \times m$ -dimensional real-valued matrices, or complex numbers, each with the scalar field  $\mathbb{R}$ .

**Definition 2.4** (Normed Linear Vector Space). A normed linear vector space is a vector space  $\mathcal{X}$  over a scalar field K with a real-valued function  $\|\mathbf{x}\| : \mathcal{X} \to \mathbb{R}_+$  that assigns to each  $\mathbf{x} \in \mathcal{X}$  a real number  $\|\mathbf{x}\|$ , called the norm of  $\mathbf{x}$ , and satisfies the following norm axioms:

$$\begin{aligned} (1) \|\mathbf{x}\| &\geq 0 \quad \text{for all } \mathbf{x} \in \mathcal{X} & \text{Non-negativity} \\ (2) \|\mathbf{x}\| &= 0 \Leftrightarrow \mathbf{x} = \mathbf{0} \\ (3) \|\mathbf{x} + \mathbf{y}\| &\leq \|\mathbf{x}\| + \|\mathbf{y}\| & \text{Triangle Inequality} \\ (4) \|\alpha \mathbf{x}\| &= |\alpha| \|\mathbf{x}\| \quad \text{for all } \mathbf{x} \in \mathcal{X} \text{ and all } \alpha \in K \end{aligned}$$

*Exercise* 2.4. Show that from the norm axioms it follows that  $\|\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{y}\| \ge \|\mathbf{x}\| - \|\mathbf{y}\|$ .

Next, we consider some classical normed vector spaces, distinguishing between finite and infinite-dimensional vector spaces. The *p*-norm,  $1 \le p < \infty$ , of a finite-dimensional vector  $\mathbf{x}^T = [x_1, \dots, x_n]$  is defined as

$$\|\mathbf{x}\|_{p} = \left(\sum_{i=1}^{n} |x_{i}|^{p}\right)^{1/p}$$
(2.35)

and for  $p = \infty$  we have

$$\|\mathbf{x}\|_{\infty} = \max_{i} |x_i| \ . \tag{2.36}$$

In addition to the  $\infty$ -norm ("infinity norm") according to (2.36), the most commonly used norms on  $\mathbb{R}^n$  are the 1-norm ("one norm")

$$\|\mathbf{x}\|_{1} = \sum_{i=1}^{n} |x_{i}| \tag{2.37}$$

and the 2-norm ("square norm" or "Euclidean norm")

$$\|\mathbf{x}\|_{2} = \left(\sum_{i=1}^{n} x_{i}^{2}\right)^{1/2} .$$
(2.38)

The following inequalities hold:

**Theorem 2.1** (Hölder's Inequality). If the relationship

$$\frac{1}{p} + \frac{1}{q} = 1$$
 (2.39)

holds for positive numbers  $1 \le p \le \infty$  and  $1 \le q \le \infty$ , then for  $\mathbf{x}^T = [x_1, \ldots, x_n]$  and  $\mathbf{y}^T = [y_1, \ldots, y_n], \text{ the inequality}$ 

$$\sum_{i=1}^{n} |x_i y_i| \le \|\mathbf{x}\|_p \|\mathbf{y}\|_q .$$
 (2.40)

Lecture Nonlinear Dynamical Systems and Control (SS 2025) ©A. Deutschmann-Olek and A. Kugi, Institut für Automatisierungs- und Regelungstechnik, TU Wien

follows.

**Theorem 2.2** (Minkowski's Inequality). For 
$$\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{y} \in \mathbb{R}^n$$
,  $1 \le p \le \infty$ , we have

$$\|\mathbf{x} + \mathbf{y}\|_{p} \le \|\mathbf{x}\|_{p} + \|\mathbf{y}\|_{p}$$
 (2.41)

The equality in (2.41) holds if and only if  $a\mathbf{x} = b\mathbf{y}$  for positive constants a and b.

Note that Minkowski's inequality corresponds to the triangle inequality (3) for norms in Definition 2.4.

In a finite-dimensional normed vector space, all norms are *equivalent*. This means that if  $\| \|_{\alpha}$  and  $\| \|_{\beta}$  denote two different norms, there always exist two constants  $0 < c_1, c_2 < \infty$  such that

$$c_1 \parallel \parallel_{\alpha} \le \parallel \parallel_{\beta} \le c_2 \parallel \parallel_{\alpha} \tag{2.42}$$

holds.

*Exercise* 2.5. Prove the statement that in a finite-dimensional vector space, all *p*-norms are *equivalent*.

*Exercise* 2.6. Show that the equivalence of norms  $(\| \|_{\alpha} \sim \| \|_{\beta})$  is an *equivalence* relation.

**Tip:** You need to prove the properties of *reflexivity* ( $\| \|_{\alpha} \sim \| \|_{\alpha}$ ), symmetry ( $\| \|_{\alpha} \sim \| \|_{\beta} \Rightarrow \| \|_{\beta} \sim \| \|_{\alpha}$ ), and transitivity ( $\| \|_{\alpha} \sim \| \|_{\beta}$  and  $\| \|_{\beta} \sim \| \|_{\gamma} \Rightarrow \| \|_{\alpha} \sim \| \|_{\gamma}$ ).

*Exercise* 2.7. Draw in the  $(x_1, x_2)$ -plane the sets  $\mathcal{M}_1 = \{\mathbf{x} \in \mathbb{R}^2 | \|\mathbf{x}\|_1 \leq 1\}$ ,  $\mathcal{M}_2 = \{\mathbf{x} \in \mathbb{R}^2 | \|\mathbf{x}\|_2 \leq 1\}$ , and  $\mathcal{M}_\infty = \{\mathbf{x} \in \mathbb{R}^2 | \|\mathbf{x}\|_\infty \leq 1\}$ . Verify the inequality

$$\|\mathbf{x}\|_{2} \le \|\mathbf{x}\|_{1} \le \sqrt{2} \|\mathbf{x}\|_{2} \tag{2.43}$$

using the image and find suitable positive constants  $c_1$  and  $c_2$  for the inequality

$$c_1 \|\mathbf{x}\|_2 \le \|\mathbf{x}\|_{\infty} \le c_2 \|\mathbf{x}\|_2 . \tag{2.44}$$

The equivalence of norms does not hold for infinite-dimensional normed vector spaces. In the *infinite-dimensional* vector space  $L_p[t_0, t_1]$ ,  $1 \le p < \infty$ , all real-valued functions x(t) in the interval  $[t_0, t_1]$  are considered, satisfying

$$\|x\|_{p} = \left(\int_{t_{0}}^{t_{1}} |x(t)|^{p} \,\mathrm{d}t\right)^{1/p} < \infty \ . \tag{2.45}$$

It is important to note that in the vector space  $L_p[t_0, t_1]$ , functions that are *almost* everywhere equal, meaning they differ only on a countable set of points, are considered identical. This is the reason why the norm  $||x||_p$  in (2.45) satisfies condition (2) of

Lecture Nonlinear Dynamical Systems and Control (SS 2025) ©A. Deutschmann-Olek and A. Kugi, Institut für Automatisierungs- und Regelungstechnik, TU Wien

Definition 2.4. The vector space  $L_{\infty}[t_0, t_1]$  describes all real-valued functions x(t) that are essentially bounded on the interval  $[t_0, t_1]$ , i.e., bounded except on a countable set of points. The corresponding norm is then  $||x||_{\infty} = \operatorname{ess\,sup}_{t_0 \leq t \leq t_1} |x(t)|$ . Hölder's inequality for the  $L_p$  spaces is as follows (see Theorem 2.1):

**Theorem 2.3** (Hölder's Inequality for  $L_p$  Spaces). For  $x(t) \in L_p[t_0, t_1]$  and  $y(t) \in L_q[t_0, t_1]$  with p > 1,

$$\frac{1}{p} + \frac{1}{q} = 1 \tag{2.46}$$

holds

$$\int_{t_0}^{t_1} |x(t)y(t)| \, \mathrm{d}t \le \|x\|_p \|y\|_q \,. \tag{2.47}$$

The *Minkowski Inequality* for  $L_p$  Spaces corresponds to the triangle inequality (3) according to the norm definition 2.4 and is therefore not repeated here.

The common norms here are the  $L_1$ ,  $L_2$ , and the  $L_{\infty}$  norms and are briefly summarized below.

$$\|x\|_{1} = \int_{t_{0}}^{t_{1}} |x(t)| \,\mathrm{d}t , \qquad (2.48a)$$

$$\|x\|_{2} = \sqrt{\int_{t_{0}}^{t_{1}} x^{2}(t) \,\mathrm{d}t} , \qquad (2.48b)$$

$$\|x\|_{\infty} = \operatorname{ess} \sup_{t_0 \le t \le t_1} |x(t)| .$$
 (2.48c)

It is easy to see that for the function

$$x(t) = \begin{cases} 1/t & \text{for } t \ge 1\\ 0 & \text{for } t < 1 \end{cases}$$
(2.49)

the  $L_1$ ,  $L_2$ , and  $L_\infty$  norms can be calculated as follows

$$\|x\|_1 = \infty , \qquad (2.50a)$$

$$\|x\|_2 = 1 , \qquad (2.50b)$$

$$\|x\|_{\infty} = 1 \tag{2.50c}$$

and thus the existence of one norm does not imply the existence of other norms.

*Exercise* 2.8. Calculate the 
$$L_1$$
,  $L_2$ , and  $L_\infty$  norms for the time functions  $x(t) = \sin(t)$ ,  $x(t) = 1 - \exp(-t)$ , and  $x(t) = 1/\sqrt[3]{t}$  for  $0 \le t \le \infty$ .

Regarding the equivalence of norms, the following definition of topologically equivalent normed vector spaces should be mentioned:

Lecture Nonlinear Dynamical Systems and Control (SS 2025) ©A. Deutschmann-Olek and A. Kugi, Institut für Automatisierungs- und Regelungstechnik, TU Wien

**Definition 2.5.** Let  $(\mathcal{X}, \| \|_{\mathcal{X}})$  and  $(\mathcal{Y}, \| \|_{\mathcal{Y}})$  be two normed linear vector spaces. Now,  $\mathcal{X}$  and  $\mathcal{Y}$  are called topologically isomorphic if there exists a bijective linear mapping  $\mathbf{T} : \mathcal{X} \to \mathcal{Y}$  and positive real constants  $c_1$  and  $c_2$  such that

$$c_1 \|\mathbf{x}\|_{\mathcal{X}} \le \|\mathbf{T}\mathbf{x}\|_{\mathcal{Y}} \le c_2 \|\mathbf{x}\|_{\mathcal{X}}$$

$$(2.51)$$

for all  $\mathbf{x} \in \mathcal{X}$ . The norms  $\| \|_{\mathcal{X}}$  and  $\| \|_{\mathcal{Y}}$  are then also called equivalent.

Finally, it should be noted that norms of finite and infinite-dimensional vector spaces can also be combined. For example, consider the vector space  $\mathbf{C}^{n}[t_{0}, t_{1}]$ , the set of all vector-valued continuous time functions mapping the interval  $[t_{0}, t_{1}]$  to  $\mathbb{R}^{n}$ . If a norm of the form

$$\|\mathbf{x}(t)\|_{C} = \sup_{t \in [t_{0}, t_{1}]} \|\mathbf{x}(t)\|_{2}$$
  
$$= \sup_{t \in [t_{0}, t_{1}]} \left(\sum_{i=1}^{n} x_{i}^{2}(t)\right)^{1/2},$$
(2.52)

is defined, then  $\| \|_2$  provides a norm on  $\mathbb{R}^n$  with an *n*-dimensional vector as the argument, while  $\| \|_C$  denotes the norm on  $\mathbb{C}^n[t_0, t_1]$  with a vector-valued time function as the argument.

*Exercise* 2.9. Prove that  $\|\mathbf{x}(t)\|_C$  from (2.50) is a norm.

#### 2.1.2 Induced Matrix Norm

A real-valued  $(m \times n)$  matrix **A** describes a linear mapping from  $\mathbb{R}^n$  to  $\mathbb{R}^m$ . Assuming  $\|\mathbf{x}\|_p$  denotes a valid norm, one defines the so-called *induced p*-norm as follows:

$$\|\mathbf{A}\|_{i,p} = \sup_{\mathbf{x}\neq\mathbf{0}} \frac{\|\mathbf{A}\mathbf{x}\|_p}{\|\mathbf{x}\|_p} .$$
(2.53)

It is immediately clear that the following inequality holds for  $\mathbf{x} \neq \mathbf{0}$ :

$$\|\mathbf{A}\mathbf{x}\|_{p} = \frac{\|\mathbf{A}\mathbf{x}\|_{p}}{\|\mathbf{x}\|_{p}} \|\mathbf{x}\|_{p} \le \sup_{\mathbf{x}\neq\mathbf{0}} \frac{\|\mathbf{A}\mathbf{x}\|_{p}}{\|\mathbf{x}\|_{p}} \|\mathbf{x}\|_{p} = \|\mathbf{A}\|_{i,p} \|\mathbf{x}\|_{p}.$$
 (2.54)

For  $p = 1, 2, \infty$ , we have:

$$\underbrace{\|\mathbf{A}\|_{i,1} = \max_{j} \sum_{i=1}^{m} |a_{ij}|}_{\text{maximum absolute column sum}} , \quad \|\mathbf{A}\|_{i,2} = \sqrt{\lambda_{\max}(\mathbf{A}^{\mathrm{T}}\mathbf{A})} \quad \text{und} \quad \underbrace{\|\mathbf{A}\|_{i,\infty} = \max_{i} \sum_{j=1}^{n} |a_{ij}|}_{\text{maximum absolute row sum}} ,$$

$$\underbrace{(2.55)}_{\text{maximum absolute row sum}}$$

where  $\lambda_{\max}(\mathbf{A}^{\mathrm{T}}\mathbf{A})$  denotes the largest eigenvalue of  $\mathbf{A}^{\mathrm{T}}\mathbf{A}$  (largest singular value of  $\mathbf{A}$ ). For example, if we consider the matrix:

$$\mathbf{A} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 4 & 6 & 5 \\ 9 & 7 & 8 \end{bmatrix},$$
(2.56)

the induced norms can be calculated as (in MATLAB using the commands norm(A,1), norm(A), and norm(A,inf):

$$\|\mathbf{A}\|_{i,1} = 16 , \qquad (2.57a)$$

$$\|\mathbf{A}\|_{i,2} = 16.708 , \qquad (2.57b)$$

$$\left\|\mathbf{A}\right\|_{i,\infty} = 24 \ . \tag{2.57c}$$

*Exercise* 2.10. Prove that for  $\mathbf{A} \in \mathbb{R}^{m \times n}$  and  $\mathbf{B} \in \mathbb{R}^{n \times l}$  with the induced matrix norm  $\| \|_{i,p}$ , the following holds:

$$\|\mathbf{AB}\|_{i,p} \le \|\mathbf{A}\|_{i,p} \|\mathbf{B}\|_{i,p} .$$
(2.58)

*Exercise* 2.11. Show that for  $\mathbf{A} \in \mathbb{R}^{m \times n}$ , the following inequalities hold:

$$\|\mathbf{A}\|_{i,2} \leq \sqrt{\|\mathbf{A}\|_{i,1}} \|\mathbf{A}\|_{i,\infty}$$

$$\frac{1}{\sqrt{n}} \|\mathbf{A}\|_{i,\infty} \leq \|\mathbf{A}\|_{i,2} \leq \sqrt{m} \|\mathbf{A}\|_{i,\infty}$$

$$\frac{1}{\sqrt{m}} \|\mathbf{A}\|_{i,1} \leq \|\mathbf{A}\|_{i,2} \leq \sqrt{n} \|\mathbf{A}\|_{i,1}$$
(2.59)

Using the so-called *Rayleigh quotient*, a convenient estimate of quadratic forms can be given. The Rayleigh quotient of a real-valued (complex-valued)  $(n \times n)$  matrix **A** with any nontrivial vector **x** is defined as:

$$R[\mathbf{x}] = \frac{\mathbf{x}^{\mathrm{T}} \mathbf{A} \mathbf{x}}{\mathbf{x}^{\mathrm{T}} \mathbf{x}} \ . \tag{2.60}$$

It is important to note that in the complex case,  $\mathbf{x}^{T}$  refers to the transposed, complex conjugate. We want to find the vector  $\mathbf{x}$  for which the Rayleigh quotient attains extreme values, i.e.,

$$\left(\frac{\partial}{\partial \mathbf{x}}R[\mathbf{x}]\right)^{T} = \frac{2\mathbf{A}\mathbf{x}}{\mathbf{x}^{T}\mathbf{x}} - \frac{\mathbf{x}^{T}\mathbf{A}\mathbf{x}}{(\mathbf{x}^{T}\mathbf{x})^{2}}2\mathbf{x} = \frac{2}{\mathbf{x}^{T}\mathbf{x}}(\mathbf{A}\mathbf{x} - R[\mathbf{x}]\mathbf{x}) = \mathbf{0}.$$
 (2.61)

Since the Rayleigh quotient is real, the extremal value problem reduces to solving an eigenvalue problem of the form:

$$(\mathbf{A} - R[\mathbf{x}]\mathbf{I})\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{0} \tag{2.62}$$

with the identity matrix **I**.

Lecture Nonlinear Dynamical Systems and Control (SS 2025) ©A. Deutschmann-Olek and A. Kugi, Institut für Automatisierungs- und Regelungstechnik, TU Wien
Therefore, the eigenvectors of  $\mathbf{A}$  are solutions to the extremal value problem of the Rayleigh quotient (2.61), and with  $\mathbf{x}$  as an eigenvector of  $\mathbf{A}$ , the Rayleigh quotient  $R[\mathbf{x}]$  corresponds to the associated eigenvalue  $\lambda$  due to:

$$R[\mathbf{x}] = \frac{\mathbf{x}^{\mathrm{T}} \mathbf{A} \mathbf{x}}{\mathbf{x}^{\mathrm{T}} \mathbf{x}} = \frac{\lambda \mathbf{x}^{\mathrm{T}} \mathbf{x}}{\mathbf{x}^{\mathrm{T}} \mathbf{x}} = \lambda$$
(2.63)

This allows us to provide the following useful estimation for all  $\mathbf{x} \in \mathbb{R}^n$ :

$$\lambda_{\min}(\mathbf{A}) \|\mathbf{x}\|_{2}^{2} \le \mathbf{x}^{\mathrm{T}} \mathbf{A} \mathbf{x} \le \lambda_{\max}(\mathbf{A}) \|\mathbf{x}\|_{2}^{2}$$
(2.64)

*Exercise* 2.12. Show that every square matrix  $\mathbf{A}$  can be decomposed into a symmetric part  $\mathbf{A}_s$  and a skew-symmetric part  $\mathbf{A}_{ss}$ . Furthermore, show that in the quadratic form  $\mathbf{x}^{\mathrm{T}}\mathbf{A}\mathbf{x}$ , the skew-symmetric part of the matrix  $\mathbf{A}$  cancels out.

*Exercise* 2.13. Use the Rayleigh quotient to show that a symmetric matrix  $\mathbf{A} \in \mathbb{R}^{n \times n}$  has exclusively real eigenvalues and a positive definite matrix  $\mathbf{A} \in \mathbb{R}^{n \times n}$  has exclusively positive real eigenvalues.

#### 2.1.3 Banach Space

In the following, we will consider convergence in normed vector spaces.

**Definition 2.6** (Convergence). A sequence of points  $(\mathbf{x}_k)$  in a normed linear vector space  $(\mathcal{X}, \| \|)$  with  $\mathbf{x}_k \in \mathcal{X}$  is called *convergent* to a limit  $\mathbf{x} \in \mathcal{X}$  (in compact notation  $\mathbf{x}_k \to \mathbf{x}$ ) if

$$\lim_{k \to \infty} \|\mathbf{x}_k - \mathbf{x}\| = 0 \tag{2.65}$$

holds. Furthermore, for a continuous function  $\mathbf{f}(\mathbf{x})$ , it holds that if  $\mathbf{x}_k \to \mathbf{x}$ , then  $\mathbf{f}(\mathbf{x}_k) \to \mathbf{f}(\mathbf{x})$ .

The above definition allows to investigate whether a given sequence converges to a given limit or not. However, this requires knowledge of the limit, which is generally not available. Therefore, one often resorts to the concept of a *Cauchy sequence*.

**Definition 2.7** (Cauchy Sequence). A sequence  $(\mathbf{x}_k)$  with  $\mathbf{x}_k \in \mathcal{X}$  is called a *Cauchy* sequence if

$$\lim_{n,m\to\infty} \|\mathbf{x}_n - \mathbf{x}_m\| = 0 \tag{2.66}$$

holds.

The relationship between convergent sequences and Cauchy sequences is characterized by the following theorem.

Lecture Nonlinear Dynamical Systems and Control (SS 2025) ©A. Deutschmann-Olek and A. Kugi, Institut für Automatisierungs- und Regelungstechnik, TU Wien

**Theorem 2.4** (Cauchy Sequence). Every convergent sequence is a Cauchy sequence. However, the converse does not generally hold in normed vector spaces.

To illustrate this theorem, consider  $\mathcal{X} = C[0, 1]$ , i.e., the sequence of continuous functions  $\{x_k(t)\}, k = 2, 3, \ldots$  in the interval  $0 \le t \le 1$ , of the form

$$x_k(t) = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{for } 0 \le t \le \frac{1}{2} - \frac{1}{k} \\ kt - \frac{k}{2} + 1 & \text{for } \frac{1}{2} - \frac{1}{k} < t \le \frac{1}{2} \\ 1 & \text{for } \frac{1}{2} < t \le 1 \end{cases}$$
(2.67)

Choosing the  $L_2$  norm for  $\{x_k(t)\} \subset C[0,1],$ 

$$\|x\|_{2} = \left(\int_{0}^{1} x^{2}(t) \,\mathrm{d}t\right)^{1/2}, \qquad (2.68)$$

immediately leads to

$$\|x_m - x_n\|_2^2 = \int_{\frac{1}{2} - \frac{1}{m}}^{\frac{1}{2} - \frac{1}{n}} \left(mt - \frac{m}{2} + 1\right)^2 dt + \int_{\frac{1}{2} - \frac{1}{n}}^{\frac{1}{2}} \left(mt - \frac{m}{2} - nt + \frac{n}{2}\right)^2 dt$$

$$= \frac{(m - n)^2}{3n^2m}$$
(2.69)

for n > m, and

$$\lim_{n,m \to \infty} \|x_m - x_n\|_2^2 = 0 .$$
 (2.70)

Thus, it can be seen that the sequence (2.67) is a Cauchy sequence for the  $L_2$  norm. However, for the limit function, we have

$$\lim_{k \to \infty} x_k(t) = x(t) = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{for } 0 \le t < \frac{1}{2} \\ 1 & \text{for } \frac{1}{2} < t \le 1 \end{cases}.$$
 (2.71)

This shows that the limit function x(t) is not continuous and therefore not an element of C[0, 1].

*Exercise* 2.14. Draw a plot of the sequence (2.67).

Since it is generally of interest that the limit of Cauchy sequences in a normed linear vector space also lies in this vector space, the concept of a *Banach space* is introduced.

**Definition 2.8** (Banach space). A normed linear vector space  $(\mathcal{X}, || ||)$  is called complete if every Cauchy sequence converges to an element  $\mathbf{x} \in \mathcal{X}$ . A complete, normed vector space is also called a *Banach space*.

**Theorem 2.5** (Cauchy convergence criterion). In a complete, normed vector space, a sequence converges if and only if it is a Cauchy sequence.

The normed linear vector spaces  $(\mathbb{R}^n, || ||_p)$ ,  $(\mathbb{R}^n, || ||_{\infty})$ ,  $L_p[t_0, t_1]$ , and  $L_{\infty}[t_0, t_1]$  are examples of Banach spaces. Furthermore, it can be shown that C[0, 1] with the norm  $|| ||_{\infty}$  is also a Banach space.

For the following, some important definitions are needed:

**Definition 2.9** (Closed subset). A subset  $S \subset \mathcal{X}$  is called *closed* if for every convergent sequence  $(\mathbf{x}_k)$  with  $\mathbf{x}_k \in S$ , the limit also lies in S. If S is not closed, one can add to S the set of all possible limits of convergent sequences in S, and this set is called the *closure* of S denoted by  $\overline{S}$ . Thus,  $\overline{S}$  is the smallest closed subset containing S.

**Definition 2.10** (Bounded subset). A subset  $\mathcal{S} \subset \mathcal{X}$  is *bounded* if

$$\sup_{\mathbf{x}\in\bar{\mathcal{S}}} \|\mathbf{x}\|_{\mathcal{X}} < \infty .$$
(2.72)

**Definition 2.11** (Compact subset). A subset  $S \subset \mathcal{X}$  is called *compact* or *relatively compact* if every sequence in S or  $\overline{S}$  contains a convergent subsequence with the limit in S or  $\overline{S}$ .

The following theorems hold for subspaces of a Banach space:

Theorem 2.6. In a Banach space, a subset is complete if and only if it is closed.

**Theorem 2.7.** In a normed linear vector space, every finite-dimensional subspace is complete.

Next, consider an equation of the form  $\mathbf{x} = T(\mathbf{x})$ . A solution  $\mathbf{x}^*$  of this equation is called a *fixed point* of the mapping T, since  $\mathbf{x}^*$  is invariant under T. A classical approach to finding the fixed point is the so-called *successive approximation* using the recurrence equation  $\mathbf{x}_{k+1} = T(\mathbf{x}_k)$  with the initial value  $\mathbf{x}_0$ . The *contraction mapping theorem* provides sufficient conditions for the existence of a unique fixed point for the mapping T in a Banach space and for the convergence of the successive approximation sequence to this fixed point.

**Theorem 2.8** (Contraction Theorem). Let S be a non-empty closed subset of a Banach space  $\mathcal{X}$  with the mapping  $T : S \to S$ . If for all  $\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{y} \in S$  the inequality

$$||T(\mathbf{x}) - T(\mathbf{y})|| \le \rho ||\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{y}||, \quad 0 \le \rho < 1,$$
 (2.73)

holds, then the equation

$$\mathbf{x} = T(\mathbf{x}) \tag{2.74}$$

has exactly one fixed point solution  $\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{x}^*$ , and the sequence  $\mathbf{x}_{k+1} = T(\mathbf{x}_k)$  converges for every initial value  $\mathbf{x}_0 \in S$  to  $\mathbf{x}^*$ . In this case, T is called a contraction.

The following exercise demonstrates a simple application of the Contraction Theorem. *Exercise* 2.15. Consider a linear system of equations of the form

$$\mathbf{A}\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{b} \tag{2.75}$$

with a real-valued  $(n \times n)$  matrix **A**. Suppose

$$a_{ii}| > \sum_{j \neq i} |a_{ij}| . \tag{2.76}$$

Show that the equation system Ax = b has a unique solution, which can be computed using the recurrence equation

$$\mathbf{D}\mathbf{x}_{k+1} = (\mathbf{D} - \mathbf{A})\mathbf{x}_k + \mathbf{b}, \quad k \ge 0, \quad \mathbf{D} = \operatorname{diag}(a_{11}, a_{22}, \dots, a_{nn})$$
 (2.77)

for every  $\mathbf{x}_0 \in \mathbb{R}^n$ .

#### 2.1.4 Hilbert Space

A so-called *pre-Hilbert space* is a linear vector space  $\mathcal{X}$  equipped with an inner product.

**Definition 2.12** (Pre-Hilbert Space). Let  $\mathcal{X}$  be a linear vector space over the scalar field K. A mapping  $\langle \mathbf{x}, \mathbf{y} \rangle : \mathcal{X} \times \mathcal{X} \to K$ , which assigns to each pair of elements  $\mathbf{x}$ ,  $\mathbf{y} \in \mathcal{X}$  a scalar, is called an *inner product* if it satisfies the following conditions:

$$\begin{aligned} \langle 1 \rangle \langle \mathbf{x} + \mathbf{y}, \mathbf{z} \rangle &= \langle \mathbf{x}, \mathbf{z} \rangle + \langle \mathbf{y}, \mathbf{z} \rangle \quad \text{(Sesquilinear form)} \\ \langle 2 \rangle \langle \mathbf{x}, \mathbf{y} \rangle &= \langle \mathbf{y}, \mathbf{x} \rangle^* \\ \langle 3 \rangle \langle a \mathbf{x}, \mathbf{y} \rangle &= a \langle \mathbf{x}, \mathbf{y} \rangle \\ \langle 4 \rangle \langle \mathbf{x}, \mathbf{x} \rangle &\geq 0 \quad \text{und} \quad \langle \mathbf{x}, \mathbf{x} \rangle = 0 \Leftrightarrow \mathbf{x} = 0 \end{aligned}$$

$$(2.78)$$

where  $\langle \mathbf{y}, \mathbf{x} \rangle^*$  denotes the complex conjugate of  $\langle \mathbf{y}, \mathbf{x} \rangle$  and  $a \in K$ .

Examples of vector spaces with an inner product include vectors in  $\mathbb{R}^n$  with

$$\langle \mathbf{x}, \mathbf{y} \rangle = \mathbf{y}^{\mathrm{T}} \mathbf{x}$$
 (2.79)

or the vector space of continuous time functions on the interval  $-1 \le t \le 1$  with the inner product

$$\langle x, y \rangle = \int_{-1}^{1} y(\tau) x(\tau) \,\mathrm{d}\tau \;. \tag{2.80}$$

As the examples show, the inner product also defines the specific norm

$$\left\|\mathbf{x}\right\|_{2} = \sqrt{\langle \mathbf{x}, \mathbf{x} \rangle} \ . \tag{2.81}$$

To generalize this property, the following theorem is needed.

Lecture Nonlinear Dynamical Systems and Control (SS 2025) ©A. Deutschmann-Olek and A. Kugi, Institut für Automatisierungs- und Regelungstechnik, TU Wien

**Theorem 2.9** (Cauchy-Schwarz Inequality). For all  $\mathbf{x}$ ,  $\mathbf{y}$ , elements of a linear vector space  $\mathcal{X}$  with scalar field K and an inner product, the following inequality holds:

$$|\langle \mathbf{x}, \mathbf{y} \rangle| \le \|\mathbf{x}\|_2 \|\mathbf{y}\|_2 . \tag{2.82}$$

The equality in (2.82) is satisfied if and only if  $\mathbf{x} = \lambda \mathbf{y}$  or  $\mathbf{y} = \mathbf{0}$ .

*Proof.* To prove this, consider the inequality valid for all  $a \in K$ :

$$0 \leq \langle \mathbf{x} - a\mathbf{y}, \mathbf{x} - a\mathbf{y} \rangle$$
  
=  $\langle \mathbf{x}, \mathbf{x} \rangle - \langle a\mathbf{y}, \mathbf{x} \rangle - \underbrace{\langle \mathbf{x}, a\mathbf{y} \rangle}_{=\langle a\mathbf{y}, \mathbf{x} \rangle^* = a^* \langle \mathbf{y}, \mathbf{x} \rangle^*} + |a|^2 \langle \mathbf{y}, \mathbf{y} \rangle$  (2.83)

with  $\mathbf{y} \neq \mathbf{0}$ . Choosing

$$a = \frac{\langle \mathbf{x}, \mathbf{y} \rangle}{\langle \mathbf{y}, \mathbf{y} \rangle} , \qquad (2.84)$$

it follows

$$0 \le \langle \mathbf{x}, \mathbf{x} \rangle - \frac{\|\langle \mathbf{x}, \mathbf{y} \rangle\|^2}{\langle \mathbf{y}, \mathbf{y} \rangle}$$
(2.85)

or

$$|\langle \mathbf{x}, \mathbf{y} \rangle| \le \sqrt{\langle \mathbf{x}, \mathbf{x} \rangle \langle \mathbf{y}, \mathbf{y} \rangle} = \|\mathbf{x}\|_2 \|\mathbf{y}\|_2 .$$
 (2.86)

For  $\mathbf{y} = \mathbf{0}$ , nothing needs to be shown.

**Theorem 2.10** (Associated Norm in Pre-Hilbert Spaces). In a pre-Hilbert space  $\mathcal{X}$ , the inner product induces a function  $\|\mathbf{x}\|_2 = \sqrt{\langle \mathbf{x}, \mathbf{x} \rangle}$  that is a norm according to the definition in 2.4.

In a pre-Hilbert space, there are other useful properties:

**Theorem 2.11.** In a pre-Hilbert space  $\mathcal{X}$ , if  $\langle \mathbf{x}, \mathbf{y} \rangle = 0$  for all  $\mathbf{x} \in \mathcal{X}$ , then  $\mathbf{y} = \mathbf{0}$ .

*Exercise* 2.16. Prove Theorem 2.11.

**Theorem 2.12** (Parallelogram Equation). In a pre-Hilbert space  $\mathcal{X}$ , the following equation holds:

$$\|\mathbf{x} + \mathbf{y}\|_{2}^{2} + \|\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{y}\|_{2}^{2} = 2\|\mathbf{x}\|_{2}^{2} + 2\|\mathbf{y}\|_{2}^{2} .$$
(2.87)

*Exercise* 2.17. Prove Theorem 2.12.

Lecture Nonlinear Dynamical Systems and Control (SS 2025) @A. Deutschmann-Olek and A. Kugi, Institut für Automatisierungs- und Regelungstechnik, TU Wien

**Definition 2.13** (Hilbert Space). A complete pre-Hilbert space is called a *Hilbert space*.

Therefore, a Hilbert space is a Banach space equipped with an inner product that, according to Theorem 2.10, induces a norm. The spaces  $(\mathbb{R}^n, || ||_2)$  and  $L_2[t_0, t_1]$  are Hilbert spaces with inner products

$$\langle \mathbf{x}, \mathbf{y} \rangle = \mathbf{y}^{\mathrm{T}} \mathbf{x}$$
 (2.88)

for  $\mathbf{x}^T = [x_1, \dots, x_n]$  and  $\mathbf{y}^T = [y_1, \dots, y_n]$ , and

$$\langle x, y \rangle_{L_2[t_0, t_1]} = \int_{t_0}^{t_1} x(t) y^*(t) \,\mathrm{d}t$$
 (2.89)

for  $x, y \in L_2[t_0, t_1]$ . It is important to note that in this case, the Cauchy-Schwarz inequality (2.82) corresponds to Hölder's inequality (2.40) or (2.47) for p = q = 2.

#### 2.1.5 Existence and Uniqueness

The solution of a differential equation does not have to be unique. To see this, consider the differential equation

$$\dot{x} = x^{1/3}$$
,  $x_0 = 0$ . (2.90)

It is easy to verify that

$$x(t) = 0$$
, (2.91a)

$$x(t) = \left(\frac{2t}{3}\right)^{3/2} \tag{2.91b}$$

are solutions of (2.90). Although the right-hand side of the differential equation is continuous, the solution is not unique. In fact, continuity guarantees the *existence* of a solution, but further conditions are needed for *uniqueness*. In the following, the time-varying system

$$\dot{\mathbf{x}} = \mathbf{f}(t, \mathbf{x}) , \quad \mathbf{x}(t_0) = \mathbf{x}_0 \tag{2.92}$$

is examined, as this also covers the non-autonomous case.

**Theorem 2.13** (Local Existence and Uniqueness). Let  $\mathbf{f}(t, \mathbf{x})$  be piecewise continuous in t and satisfy the estimate (Lipschitz condition)

$$\|\mathbf{f}(t, \mathbf{x}) - \mathbf{f}(t, \mathbf{y})\| \le L \|\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{y}\|, \quad 0 < L < \infty$$
 (2.93)

for all  $\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{y} \in B = {\mathbf{x} \in \mathbb{R}^n \mid ||\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{x}_0|| \le r}$  and all  $t \in [t_0, t_0 + \tau]$ . Then there exists  $a \delta > 0$  such that

$$\dot{\mathbf{x}} = \mathbf{f}(t, \mathbf{x}) , \quad \mathbf{x}(t_0) = \mathbf{x}_0 \tag{2.94}$$

has exactly one solution for  $t \in [t_0, t_0 + \delta]$ . In this case, the function  $\mathbf{f}(t, \mathbf{x})$  is said to be locally Lipschitz on  $B \subset \mathbb{R}^n$ . If condition (2.93) holds in the entire  $\mathbb{R}^n$ , then the

Lecture Nonlinear Dynamical Systems and Control (SS 2025) ©A. Deutschmann-Olek and A. Kugi, Institut für Automatisierungs- und Regelungstechnik, TU Wien

function  $\mathbf{f}(t, \mathbf{x})$  is called globally Lipschitz.

*Proof.* The proof of this theorem is based on the contraction theorem according to Theorem 2.8. In a first step, the Banach space  $\mathcal{X} = \mathbf{C}^n[t_0, t_0 + \delta]$  of all vector-valued continuous time functions in the time interval  $[t_0, t_0 + \delta]$  is defined with the norm  $\|\mathbf{x}(t)\|_C = \sup_{t \in [t_0, t_0 + \delta]} \|\mathbf{x}(t)\|$ . For further explanation, see also (2.52). Furthermore, the differential equation (2.94) is transformed into an equivalent integral equation of the form

$$(P\mathbf{x})(t) = \mathbf{x}_0 + \int_{t_0}^t \mathbf{f}(\tau, \mathbf{x}(\tau)) \,\mathrm{d}\tau$$
(2.95)

Within the proof, it is then shown that the mapping P on the closed subset  $S \subset \mathcal{X}$ with  $S = \{\mathbf{x} \in \mathbf{C}^n[t_0, t_0 + \delta] \mid ||\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{x}_0||_C \leq r\}$  is a contraction and that P maps the subset S to itself. To do this, one calculates

$$(P\mathbf{x}_{1})(t) - (P\mathbf{x}_{2})(t) = \int_{t_{0}}^{t} \mathbf{f}(\tau, \mathbf{x}_{1}(\tau)) \,\mathrm{d}\tau - \int_{t_{0}}^{t} \mathbf{f}(\tau, \mathbf{x}_{2}(\tau)) \,\mathrm{d}\tau$$
(2.96)

for  $\mathbf{x}_1(t)$ ,  $\mathbf{x}_2(t) \in \mathcal{S}$ . It now holds that

$$\|(P\mathbf{x}_{1})(t) - (P\mathbf{x}_{2})(t)\|_{C} = \left\| \int_{t_{0}}^{t} (\mathbf{f}(\tau, \mathbf{x}_{1}(\tau)) - \mathbf{f}(\tau, \mathbf{x}_{2}(\tau))) \,\mathrm{d}\tau \right\|_{C}$$

$$\leq \int_{t_{0}}^{t} \|\mathbf{f}(\tau, \mathbf{x}_{1}(\tau)) - \mathbf{f}(\tau, \mathbf{x}_{2}(\tau))\|_{C} \,\mathrm{d}\tau$$

$$\leq \int_{t_{0}}^{t} L \|\mathbf{x}_{1}(\tau) - \mathbf{x}_{2}(\tau)\|_{C} \,\mathrm{d}\tau$$

$$\leq L\delta \|\mathbf{x}_{1}(t) - \mathbf{x}_{2}(t)\|_{C} \,\mathrm{d}\tau$$
(2.97)

and by choosing

$$\delta \le \rho/L \;, \quad \rho < 1 \;, \tag{2.98}$$

and with (2.98), Theorem 2.8 shows that P is a contraction on S. In the next step, it must be proven that the mapping P maps the subset  $S \subset \mathcal{X}$  to itself. Since  $\mathbf{f}$  is piecewise continuous, it follows that  $\mathbf{f}(t, \mathbf{x}_0)$  is bounded on the interval  $[t_0, t_0 + \delta]$ , hence

$$h = \max_{t \in [t_0, t_0 + \delta]} \| \mathbf{f}(t, \mathbf{x}_0) \| .$$
(2.99)

This results in

$$\begin{aligned} |(P\mathbf{x})(t) - \mathbf{x}_{0}||_{C} &\leq \int_{t_{0}}^{t} ||\mathbf{f}(\tau, \mathbf{x}(\tau))||_{C} \,\mathrm{d}\tau \\ &\leq \int_{t_{0}}^{t} ||\mathbf{f}(\tau, \mathbf{x}(\tau)) - \mathbf{f}(\tau, \mathbf{x}_{0}) + \mathbf{f}(\tau, \mathbf{x}_{0})||_{C} \,\mathrm{d}\tau \\ &\leq \int_{t_{0}}^{t} (||\mathbf{f}(\tau, \mathbf{x}(\tau)) - \mathbf{f}(\tau, \mathbf{x}_{0})||_{C} + ||\mathbf{f}(\tau, \mathbf{x}_{0})||_{C}) \,\mathrm{d}\tau \\ &\leq \int_{t_{0}}^{t} (L||\mathbf{x}(\tau) - \mathbf{x}_{0}||_{C} + h) \,\mathrm{d}\tau \\ &\leq \delta(Lr + h) \;. \end{aligned}$$

$$(2.100)$$

Choosing

$$\delta \le \frac{r}{Lr+h} , \qquad (2.101)$$

ensures that S is mapped onto itself under P. Combining (2.98) and (2.101) and choosing  $\delta$  to be less than or equal to the considered time interval  $\tau$  from Theorem 2.13,

$$\delta = \min\left(\frac{\rho}{L}, \frac{r}{Lr+h}, \tau\right), \quad \rho < 1 , \qquad (2.102)$$

the existence and uniqueness of the solution in S for  $t \in [t_0, t_0 + \delta]$  is thus demonstrated.

Since the mapping P from (2.95) is a contraction, it follows from Theorem 2.8 that the sequence  $\mathbf{x}_{k+1} = P\mathbf{x}_k$  with  $\mathbf{x}_0 = \mathbf{x}(t_0)$  converges to the unique solution of the integral equation (2.95) or the equivalent differential equation (2.94). This method is also known as the *Picard iteration method*.

Exercise 2.18. Show that for linear, time-invariant systems of the form

$$\dot{\mathbf{x}} = \mathbf{A}\mathbf{x} , \quad \mathbf{x}(t_0) = \mathbf{x}_0 , \qquad (2.103)$$

the Picard iteration method precisely iteratively calculates the transition matrix  $\mathbf{\Phi}(t) = e^{\mathbf{A}t}$ .

*Exercise* 2.19. Calculate, using the Picard iteration method, the transition matrix of a linear, time-varying system of the form

$$\dot{\mathbf{x}} = \mathbf{A}(t)\mathbf{x} , \quad \mathbf{x}(t_0) = \mathbf{x}_0 . \tag{2.104}$$

Lecture Nonlinear Dynamical Systems and Control (SS 2025) @A. Deutschmann-Olek and A. Kugi, Institut für Automatisierungs- und Regelungstechnik, TU Wien

Tip: The transition matrix of (2.104) is calculated from the *Peano-Baker series* as

$$\mathbf{\Phi}(t) = \mathbf{I} + \int_{0}^{t} \mathbf{A}(\tau) \,\mathrm{d}\tau + \int_{0}^{t} \mathbf{A}(\tau) \int_{0}^{\tau} \mathbf{A}(\tau_{1}) \,\mathrm{d}\tau_{1} \,\mathrm{d}\tau + \dots \qquad (2.105)$$

For a scalar function  $f(x) : \mathbb{R} \to \mathbb{R}$  that does not explicitly depend on time t, the Lipschitz condition (2.93) can be written very simply as

$$\frac{|f(y) - f(x)|}{|y - x|} \le L \tag{2.106}$$

The condition (2.106) allows a very simple graphical interpretation, namely the function f(x) must not have a slope greater than L. Therefore, functions f(x) that have an infinite slope at a point (like the function  $x^{1/3}$  from (2.90) at the point x = 0) are certainly not locally Lipschitz. This also implies that discontinuous functions f(x) do not satisfy the Lipschitz condition (2.93) at the point of discontinuity. This connection between the Lipschitz condition and the boundedness of  $\left|\frac{\partial}{\partial x}f(x)\right|$  is generalized in the following theorem without proof:

**Theorem 2.14** (Lipschitz condition and continuity). If the functions  $\mathbf{f}(t, \mathbf{x})$  from (2.92) and  $[\partial \mathbf{f}/\partial \mathbf{x}](t, \mathbf{x})$  are continuous on the set  $[t_0, t_0 + \delta] \times B$  with  $B \subset \mathbb{R}^n$ , then  $\mathbf{f}(t, \mathbf{x})$  locally satisfies the Lipschitz condition of (2.93).

To verify the global existence and uniqueness of a differential equation of type (2.92), the following theorem is provided:

**Theorem 2.15** (Global Existence and Uniqueness). Assume that the function  $\mathbf{f}(t, \mathbf{x})$ from (2.92) is piecewise continuous in t and globally Lipschitz for all  $t \in [t_0, t_0 + \tau]$ according to Theorem 2.13. Then the differential equation (2.92) has a unique solution in the time interval  $t \in [t_0, t_0 + \tau]$ . If the function  $\mathbf{f}(t, \mathbf{x})$  from (2.92) and  $[\partial \mathbf{f}/\partial \mathbf{x}](t, \mathbf{x})$ are continuous on the set  $[t_0, t_0 + \tau] \times \mathbb{R}^n$ , then  $\mathbf{f}(t, \mathbf{x})$  is globally Lipschitz if and only if  $[\partial \mathbf{f}/\partial \mathbf{x}](t, \mathbf{x})$  on  $[t_0, t_0 + \tau] \times \mathbb{R}^n$  is uniformly bounded.

To explain,  $[\partial \mathbf{f}/\partial \mathbf{x}](t, \mathbf{x})$  is uniformly bounded if, independently of  $t_0 \ge 0$ , for every positive, finite constant a, there exists a  $\beta(a) > 0$  independent of  $t_0$  such that

$$\left\|\frac{\partial \mathbf{f}}{\partial \mathbf{x}}(t_0, \mathbf{x}(t_0))\right\|_i \le a \Rightarrow \left\|\frac{\partial \mathbf{f}}{\partial \mathbf{x}}(t, \mathbf{x}(t))\right\|_i \le \beta(a)$$
(2.107)

with  $\| \|_i$  denoting the induced norm according to (2.53) for all  $t \in [t_0, t_0 + \tau]$  and all  $\mathbf{x} \in \mathbb{R}^n$ .

The proofs of the last two theorems can be found in the literature cited at the end of this chapter. As an example, consider the system

$$\underbrace{\begin{bmatrix} \dot{x}_1 \\ \dot{x}_2 \end{bmatrix}}_{\dot{\mathbf{x}}} = \underbrace{\begin{bmatrix} -x_1 + x_1 x_2 \\ x_2 - x_1 x_2 \end{bmatrix}}_{\mathbf{f}(\mathbf{x})} .$$
(2.108)

Lecture Nonlinear Dynamical Systems and Control (SS 2025) ©A. Deutschmann-Olek and A. Kugi, Institut für Automatisierungs- und Regelungstechnik, TU Wien

From Theorem 2.14, it can be immediately concluded that  $\mathbf{f}(\mathbf{x})$  from (2.108) is locally Lipschitz on  $\mathbb{R}^2$ . However, the application of Theorem 2.15 shows that  $\mathbf{f}(\mathbf{x})$  is not globally Lipschitz, since  $\partial \mathbf{f}/\partial \mathbf{x}$  on  $\mathbb{R}^2$  is not uniformly bounded.

In summary, it can be stated that the mathematical models of most physical systems in the form of (2.92) are locally Lipschitz, as this essentially corresponds to a requirement of continuous differentiability of the right-hand side, as stated in Theorem 2.14. In contrast, the global Lipschitz condition is very restrictive and is satisfied by only a few physical systems, as was already hinted at by the requirement for the uniform boundedness of  $[\partial \mathbf{f}/\partial \mathbf{x}](t, \mathbf{x})$ .

*Exercise* 2.20. Check for the following functions

(1) 
$$f(x) = x^2 + |x|$$
 (2.109)

(2) 
$$f(x) = \sin(x)\operatorname{sgn}(x)$$
 (2.110)

(3) 
$$f(x) = \tan(x)$$
 (2.111)

and

$$\mathbf{f}(\mathbf{x}) = \begin{bmatrix} ax_1 + \tanh(bx_1) - \tanh(bx_2) \\ ax_2 + \tanh(bx_1) + \tanh(bx_2) \end{bmatrix}$$
(2.112)

and

$$\mathbf{f}(\mathbf{x}) = \begin{bmatrix} -x_1 + a \|x_2\| \\ -(a+b)x_1 + bx_1^2 - x_1x_2 \end{bmatrix},$$
(2.113)

whether they are (a) continuous, (b) continuously differentiable, (c) locally Lipschitz, and (d) globally Lipschitz.

*Exercise* 2.21. Show that the system

$$\begin{bmatrix} \dot{x}_1\\ \dot{x}_2 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} -x_1 + \frac{2x_2}{1+x_2^2}\\ -x_2 + \frac{2x_1}{1+x_1^2} \end{bmatrix}, \quad \mathbf{x}(t_0) = \mathbf{x}_0$$
(2.114)

has a unique solution for all  $t \ge t_0$ .

#### 2.1.6 Influence of Parameters

Often one wants to investigate the influence of parameters on the solution of a differential equation of the form

$$\dot{\mathbf{x}} = \mathbf{f}(t, \mathbf{x}, \mathbf{p}) , \quad \mathbf{x}(t_0) = \mathbf{x}_0 \tag{2.115}$$

with the parameter vector  $\mathbf{p} \in \mathbb{R}^d$ . Let  $\mathbf{p}_0$  denote the nominal value of the parameter vector  $\mathbf{p}$ .

**Theorem 2.16** (Influence of Parameters). Assume that  $\mathbf{f}(t, \mathbf{x}, \mathbf{p})$  is continuous in  $(t, \mathbf{x}, \mathbf{p})$  and locally Lipschitz in  $\mathbf{x}$  (Lipschitz condition (2.93)) on  $[t_0, t_0 + \tau] \times D \times \{\mathbf{p} | \|\mathbf{p} - \mathbf{p}_0\| \leq r\}$  with  $D \subset \mathbb{R}^n$ . Furthermore, let  $\mathbf{y}(t, \mathbf{p}_0)$  be a solution of the differential equation  $\dot{\mathbf{y}} = \mathbf{f}(t, \mathbf{y}, \mathbf{p}_0)$  with the initial value  $\mathbf{y}(t_0, \mathbf{p}_0) = \mathbf{y}_0 \in D$ , where the solution  $\mathbf{y}(t, \mathbf{p}_0)$  remains in D for all times  $t \in [t_0, t_0 + \tau]$ . Then, for a given  $\varepsilon > 0$ , there exist  $\delta_1, \delta_2 > 0$  such that for

$$\|\mathbf{z}_0 - \mathbf{y}_0\| < \delta_1 \quad und \quad \|\mathbf{p} - \mathbf{p}_0\| < \delta_2 \tag{2.116}$$

the differential equation  $\dot{\mathbf{z}} = \mathbf{f}(t, \mathbf{z}, \mathbf{p})$  with the initial value  $\mathbf{z}(t_0, \mathbf{p}) = \mathbf{z}_0$  has a unique solution  $\mathbf{z}(t, \mathbf{p})$  for all times  $t \in [t_0, t_0 + \tau]$  and  $\mathbf{z}(t, \mathbf{p})$  satisfies the condition

$$|\mathbf{z}(t,\mathbf{p}) - \mathbf{y}(t,\mathbf{p}_0)|| < \varepsilon \tag{2.117}$$

For the proof of this theorem, we refer to the literature cited at the end of this chapter. In essence, this theorem states that for all parameters **p** sufficiently close to the nominal value  $\mathbf{p}_0$  ( $\|\mathbf{p} - \mathbf{p}_0\| < \delta_2$ ), the differential equation (2.115) has a unique solution that is very close to the nominal solution of the differential equation  $\dot{\mathbf{x}} = \mathbf{f}(t, \mathbf{x}, \mathbf{p}_0), \mathbf{x}(t_0) = \mathbf{x}_0$ .

Assuming that  $\mathbf{f}(t, \mathbf{x}, \mathbf{p})$  satisfies the conditions of Theorem 2.16 and has continuous first partial derivatives with respect to  $\mathbf{x}$  and  $\mathbf{p}$  for all  $(t, \mathbf{x}, \mathbf{p}) \in [t_0, t_0 + \tau] \times \mathbb{R}^n \times \mathbb{R}^d$ . The differential equation (2.115) can now be rewritten into an equivalent integral equation of the form

$$\mathbf{x}(t,\mathbf{p}) = \mathbf{x}_0 + \int_{t_0}^t \mathbf{f}(s,\mathbf{x}(s,\mathbf{p}),\mathbf{p}) \,\mathrm{d}s$$
(2.118)

Due to the continuous differentiability of  $\mathbf{f}(t, \mathbf{x}, \mathbf{p})$  with respect to  $\mathbf{x}$  and  $\mathbf{p}$ , we have

$$\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}\mathbf{p}}\mathbf{x}(t,\mathbf{p}) = \underbrace{\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}\mathbf{p}}\mathbf{x}_{0}}_{=\mathbf{0}} + \int_{t_{0}}^{t} \frac{\partial}{\partial\mathbf{x}}\mathbf{f}(s,\mathbf{x}(s,\mathbf{p}),\mathbf{p})\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}\mathbf{p}}\mathbf{x}(s,\mathbf{p}) + \frac{\partial}{\partial\mathbf{p}}\mathbf{f}(s,\mathbf{x}(s,\mathbf{p}),\mathbf{p})\,\mathrm{d}s \,. \quad (2.119)$$

Differentiating (2.119) with respect to t, we obtain

$$\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t}\mathbf{x}_{\mathbf{p}}(t,\mathbf{p}) = \mathbf{A}(t,\mathbf{p})\mathbf{x}_{\mathbf{p}}(t,\mathbf{p}) + \mathbf{B}(t,\mathbf{p}) , \quad \mathbf{x}_{\mathbf{p}}(t_0,\mathbf{p}) = \mathbf{0}$$
(2.120)

and

$$\mathbf{x}_{\mathbf{p}}(t,\mathbf{p}) = \frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}\mathbf{p}}\mathbf{x}(t,\mathbf{p}) , \qquad (2.121a)$$

$$\mathbf{A}(t,\mathbf{p}) = \left. \frac{\partial}{\partial \mathbf{x}} \mathbf{f}(t,\mathbf{x},\mathbf{p}) \right|_{\mathbf{x}=\mathbf{x}(t,\mathbf{p})},\tag{2.121b}$$

$$\mathbf{B}(t,\mathbf{p}) = \left. \frac{\partial}{\partial \mathbf{p}} \mathbf{f}(t,\mathbf{x},\mathbf{p}) \right|_{\mathbf{x}=\mathbf{x}(t,\mathbf{p})}.$$
 (2.121c)

For parameters **p** sufficiently close to the nominal value  $\mathbf{p}_0$ , the matrices  $\mathbf{A}(t, \mathbf{p})$  and  $\mathbf{B}(t, \mathbf{p})$ , and thus  $\mathbf{x}_{\mathbf{p}}(t, \mathbf{p})$ , are well-defined on the time interval  $[t_0, t_0 + \tau]$ . Substituting

Lecture Nonlinear Dynamical Systems and Control (SS 2025) ©A. Deutschmann-Olek and A. Kugi, Institut für Automatisierungs- und Regelungstechnik, TU Wien

 $\mathbf{p} = \mathbf{p}_0$  into  $\mathbf{x}_{\mathbf{p}}(t, \mathbf{p})$  yields the so-called *sensitivity function* 

$$\mathbf{S}(t) = \mathbf{x}_{\mathbf{p}}(t, \mathbf{p}_0) = \left. \frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}\mathbf{p}} \mathbf{x}(t, \mathbf{p}) \right|_{\mathbf{p} = \mathbf{p}_0}$$
(2.122)

which is the solution of the differential equation (compare with (2.120))

$$\dot{\mathbf{x}} = \mathbf{f}(t, \mathbf{x}, \mathbf{p}_0) , \qquad (2.123a)$$

$$\mathbf{x}(t_0) = \mathbf{x}_0 , \qquad (2.123b)$$

$$\dot{\mathbf{S}} = \left[\frac{\partial}{\partial \mathbf{x}}\mathbf{f}(t, \mathbf{x}, \mathbf{p})\right]_{\mathbf{p}=\mathbf{p}_0} \mathbf{S} + \left[\frac{\partial}{\partial \mathbf{p}}\mathbf{f}(t, \mathbf{x}, \mathbf{p})\right]_{\mathbf{p}=\mathbf{p}_0}, \qquad (2.123c)$$

$$\mathbf{S}(t_0) = \mathbf{0}$$
 . (2.123d)

The matrix differential equation for  $\mathbf{S}(t)$  is also referred to as the *sensitivity equation*. The sensitivity function can be interpreted as providing a first-order approximation for the effect of parameter variations on the solution. This allows for approximating the solution  $\mathbf{x}(t, \mathbf{p})$  of (2.115) for small changes in the parameter vector  $\mathbf{p}$  from the nominal value  $\mathbf{p}_0$  in the form

$$\mathbf{x}(t, \mathbf{p}) \approx \mathbf{x}(t, \mathbf{p}_0) + \mathbf{S}(t)(\mathbf{p} - \mathbf{p}_0)$$
(2.124)

This approximation is, among other things, the basis for singular perturbation theory. While one could imagine determining the effect of parameter variations by simply varying the parameters in the differential equations, this approach has the disadvantage that small parameter variations often get lost in the round-off errors of the integration, thus not allowing for quantitative statements about the influence of parameters on the solution.

*Exercise* 2.22. The following differential equation system (Phase-Locked-Loop) is given

$$\dot{x}_1 = x_2 \tag{2.125}$$

$$\dot{x}_2 = -c\sin(x_1) - (a + b\cos(x_1))x_2 \tag{2.126}$$

with state  $\mathbf{x}^{\mathrm{T}} = [x_1, x_2]$  and parameter vector  $\mathbf{p}^{\mathrm{T}} = [a, b, c]$ . The nominal values of the parameter vector  $\mathbf{p}$  are  $\mathbf{p}_0 = [1, 0, 1]$ . The sensitivity function  $\mathbf{S}(t)$  according to (2.122) is sought. Compare the solutions for the nominal parameter vector  $\mathbf{p}_0$ and for the parameter vector  $\mathbf{p}^{\mathrm{T}} = [1.2, -0.2, 0.8]$  for  $\mathbf{x}_0^{\mathrm{T}} = [1, 1]$  by simulation in MATLAB/SIMULINK.

Exercise 2.23. Calculate the sensitivity equation for the Van der Pol oscillator

$$\ddot{v} - \varepsilon \left(1 - v^2\right) \dot{v} + v = 0 \tag{2.127}$$

with state  $\mathbf{x}^{\mathrm{T}} = [v, \dot{v}]$  and parameter  $p = \varepsilon$ . Compare the solutions for various small deviations from the nominal value  $\varepsilon_0 = 0.01$  by simulation in MATLAB/SIMULINK.

Lecture Nonlinear Dynamical Systems and Control (SS 2025) ©A. Deutschmann-Olek and A. Kugi, Institut für Automatisierungs- und Regelungstechnik, TU Wien

# 2.2 Literatur

- [2.1] M. Hirsch and S. Smale, Differential Equations, Dynamical Systems and Linear Algebra. San Diego: Academic Press, 1974.
- [2.2] H. K. Khalil, Nonlinear Systems (3rd Edition). New Jersey: Prentice Hall, 2002.
- [2.3] D. Luenberger, Optimization by Vector Space Methods. New York: John Wiley & Sons, 1969.
- [2.4] D. Luenberger, Introduction to Dynamic Systems. New York: John Wiley & Sons, 1979.
- [2.5] E. Slotine and W. Li, Applied Nonlinear Control. New Jersey: Prentice Hall, 1991.
- [2.6] M. Vidyasagar, Nonlinear Systems Analysis. New Jersey: Prentice Hall, 1993.

# **3** Fundamentals of Lyapunov Theory

This chapter covers the theoretical foundations for investigating the stability of an equilibrium point for autonomous and non-autonomous nonlinear systems.

## 3.1 Autonomous Systems

In this section, we consider an autonomous system

$$\dot{\mathbf{x}} = \mathbf{f}(\mathbf{x}) \tag{3.1}$$

with the smooth vector field  $\mathbf{f}(\mathbf{x})$ . Denoting the flow of (3.1) by  $\mathbf{\Phi}_t(\mathbf{x})$ , an equilibrium point  $\mathbf{x}_R$  satisfies the relation

$$\mathbf{f}(\mathbf{x}_R) = \mathbf{0}$$
 or  $\mathbf{\Phi}_t(\mathbf{x}_R) = \mathbf{x}_R$ . (3.2)

Without loss of generality, we can assume that the equilibrium point is  $\mathbf{x}_R = \mathbf{0}$ . If  $\mathbf{x}_R \neq \mathbf{0}$ , then by a simple coordinate transformation  $\mathbf{\tilde{x}} = \mathbf{x} - \mathbf{x}_R$ , one can always achieve that in the new coordinates  $\mathbf{\tilde{x}}_R = \mathbf{0}$ . The concept of a vector field will now be briefly explained.

#### 3.1.1 Vector Fields

An important concept in the study of (autonomous) systems of the form (3.1) is that of a *vector field*, where so-called *smooth vector fields* are of particular significance. The following definition applies:

**Definition 3.1** (Smooth Function). A function  $f : \mathbb{R}^n \to \mathbb{R}$  is called *smooth* or  $C^{\infty}$  if f and all *partial derivatives* of any order l

$$\frac{\partial^l}{\prod_{i=1}^n \partial^{l_i} x_i} f(x_1, \dots, x_n), \qquad \sum_{i=1}^n l_i = l, \qquad l_i \ge 0$$
(3.3)

are continuous.

This definition can now be easily extended to a mapping  $\mathbf{f} : \mathbb{R}^n \to \mathbb{R}^n$  by requiring that all components  $f_i, i = 1, ..., n$  of  $\mathbf{f}$  are smooth.

**Definition 3.2** (Vector Field). A (smooth) vector field is a prescription that assigns to each point  $\mathbf{x} \in \mathbb{R}^n$  the pair  $(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{f}(\mathbf{x})) \in \mathbb{R}^n \times \mathbb{R}^n$  through a (smooth) mapping  $\mathbf{f} : \mathbb{R}^n \to \mathbb{R}^n$ .

Note that a vector field is *not* a mapping of the form  $\mathbb{R}^n \to \mathbb{R}^n$ . A vector field assigns a linear vector space  $\mathbb{R}^n$  to each point  $\mathbf{x}$  in  $\mathbb{R}^n$ , where the specific coordinate system is the image set of the mapping  $\mathbf{f}(\mathbf{x})$ . Often, the explicit indication of the first argument in

Lecture Nonlinear Dynamical Systems and Control (SS 2025) ©A. Deutschmann-Olek and A. Kugi, Institut für Automatisierungs- und Regelungstechnik, TU Wien

 $(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{f}(\mathbf{x}))$  is suppressed and simply written as  $\mathbf{f}(\mathbf{x})$ . However, if we have two vector fields  $\mathbf{f}_1 : \mathbb{R}^n \to \mathbb{R}^n$  and  $\mathbf{f}_2 : \mathbb{R}^n \to \mathbb{R}^n$ , then they can only be added  $\mathbf{f}_1(\mathbf{x}_1) + \mathbf{f}_2(\mathbf{x}_2)$  if  $\mathbf{x}_1 = \mathbf{x}_2$ , as otherwise  $\mathbf{f}_1$  and  $\mathbf{f}_2$  would lie in different vector spaces.

As an example, consider the electrostatic field of two fixed point charges  $q_1$  and  $q_2$  in three-dimensional space. If  $q_1$  is located at position  $\mathbf{x}_{q_1}^{\mathrm{T}} = [x_{q_1,1}, x_{q_1,2}, x_{q_1,3}]$ , then to each point  $\mathbf{x}^{\mathrm{T}} = [x_1, x_2, x_3]$  the field strength  $\mathbf{E}_1(\mathbf{x})$  is assigned in the form

$$\mathbf{E}_{1}(\mathbf{x}) = \frac{q_{1}}{4\pi\varepsilon_{0}} \frac{(\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{x}_{q_{1}})}{\left(\left(x_{q_{1},1} - x_{1}\right)^{2} + \left(x_{q_{1},2} - x_{2}\right)^{2} + \left(x_{q_{1},3} - x_{3}\right)^{2}\right)^{3/2}}$$
(3.4)

Analogously, charge  $q_2$  generates the field  $\mathbf{E}_2$ . Both vector fields can be superimposed, and one obtains the force on a test charge q at position  $\mathbf{x}$  as

$$\mathbf{F} = q\mathbf{E}_1(\mathbf{x}) + q\mathbf{E}_2(\mathbf{x}) \ . \tag{3.5}$$

Note that the sum  $q\mathbf{E}_1(\mathbf{x}_1) + q\mathbf{E}_2(\mathbf{x}_2)$  is not a meaningful operation for  $\mathbf{x}_1 \neq \mathbf{x}_2$ . Figure 3.1 illustrates this fact.



Figure 3.1: Illustration of the concept of a vector field using the example of the electric field of two point charges.

For second-order systems of the type (3.1), the solution trajectories can be easily obtained graphically by drawing the vector field  $\mathbf{f}^{\mathrm{T}}(\mathbf{x}) = [f_1(x_1, x_2), f_2(x_1, x_2)]$ . The reason for this is that for a solution curve of (3.1) passing through the point  $\mathbf{x}^{\mathrm{T}} = [x_1, x_2]$ , the vector field  $\mathbf{f}(\mathbf{x})$  at point  $\mathbf{x}$  is tangential to the solution curve.

*Exercise* 3.1. Draw the vector field for the system of differential equations

$$\dot{x}_1 = x_2 \tag{3.6a}$$

$$\dot{x}_2 = -\sin(x_1) - 1.5x_2 \ . \tag{3.6b}$$

Tip: Use MAPLE and the command fieldplot for this purpose.

#### 3.1.2 Stability of the Equilibrium

These prerequisites allow us to define the stability of an equilibrium point in the sense of Lyapunov.

**Definition 3.3** (Lyapunov Stability of Autonomous Systems). The equilibrium  $\mathbf{x}_R = \mathbf{0}$  of (3.1) is called *stable (in the sense of Lyapunov)* if for every  $\varepsilon > 0$  there exists  $\delta(\varepsilon) > 0$  such that

$$\|\mathbf{x}_0\| < \delta(\varepsilon) \quad \Rightarrow \quad \|\mathbf{\Phi}_t(\mathbf{x}_0)\| < \varepsilon \tag{3.7}$$

holds for all  $t \ge 0$ . Furthermore, the equilibrium  $\mathbf{x}_R = \mathbf{0}$  of (3.1) is referred to as *attractive* if there exists a positive real number  $\eta$  such that

$$\|\mathbf{x}_0\| < \eta \quad \Rightarrow \quad \lim_{t \to \infty} \mathbf{\Phi}_t(\mathbf{x}_0) = \mathbf{0} .$$
 (3.8)

If the equilibrium  $\mathbf{x}_R = \mathbf{0}$  of (3.1) is stable and attractive, then it is also called asymptotically stable.

The choice of norms  $\| \|$  in (3.7) and (3.8) is arbitrary, as shown in Section 2.1.1, where it is demonstrated that in a finite-dimensional vector space, norms are topologically equivalent. The distinction between stable and attractive in Definition 3.3 is important because an attractive equilibrium may not necessarily be stable. An example of this is given by the system

$$\dot{x}_1 = \frac{x_1^2(x_2 - x_1) + x_2^5}{(x_1^2 + x_2^2)\left(1 + (x_1^2 + x_2^2)^2\right)}$$
(3.9a)

$$\dot{x}_2 = \frac{x_2^2(x_2 - 2x_1)}{(x_1^2 + x_2^2)\left(1 + (x_1^2 + x_2^2)^2\right)}$$
(3.9b)

with the vector field shown in Figure 3.2.

## 3.1.3 Direct (Second) Method of Lyapunov

Before discussing the direct method of Lyapunov, the physical idea behind this method will be illustrated using the simple electrical system shown in Figure 3.3.

The network equations are

$$\frac{d}{dt}i_L = \frac{1}{L}(-u_C - R_1 i_L)$$
(3.10a)

$$\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t}u_C = \frac{1}{C}\left(i_L - \frac{u_C}{R_2}\right) \tag{3.10b}$$



Figure 3.2: Vector field of an unstable but attractive point.

with the capacitor voltage  $u_C$  and the current through the inductance  $i_L$ . The energy stored in the capacitance C and inductance L

$$V = \frac{1}{2}Li_L^2 + \frac{1}{2}Cu_C^2 \tag{3.11}$$

is positive for all  $(u_C, i_L) \neq (0,0)$  and its time derivative

$$\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t}V = -R_1 i_L^2 - \frac{1}{R_2} u_C^2 \tag{3.12}$$

is negative for all  $(u_C, i_L) \neq (0,0)$ . By introducing the norm

$$\begin{bmatrix} u_C \\ i_L \end{bmatrix} = \sqrt{Cu_C^2 + Li_L^2}$$
(3.13)

it can be shown from Definition 3.3 for  $\delta = \varepsilon$  that the equilibrium  $u_C = i_L = 0$  is stable and attractive, hence asymptotically stable.

*Exercise* 3.2. Show that (3.13) is a norm.

In the context of Lyapunov theory, for nonlinear systems of type (3.1), the energy function (3.11) is replaced by a function V with corresponding properties. For this purpose, the following definition is introduced:

Lecture Nonlinear Dynamical Systems and Control (SS 2025) ©A. Deutschmann-Olek and A. Kugi, Institut für Automatisierungs- und Regelungstechnik, TU Wien



Figure 3.3: Simple electrical system.

**Definition 3.4** (Positive/Negative (Semi-)Definiteness). Let  $\mathcal{D} \subseteq \mathbb{R}^n$  be an open neighborhood of **0**. A function  $V(\mathbf{x}) : \mathcal{D} \to \mathbb{R}$  is called *locally positive (negative) definite* if the following conditions are satisfied:

- (1)  $V(\mathbf{x})$  is continuously differentiable,
- (2)  $V(\mathbf{0}) = 0$ , and
- (3)  $V(\mathbf{x}) > 0, (V(\mathbf{x}) < 0) \text{ for } \mathbf{x} \in \mathcal{D} \{\mathbf{0}\}.$

If  $\mathcal{D} = \mathbb{R}^n$  and there exists a constant r > 0 such that

$$\inf_{\|\mathbf{x}\| \ge r} V(\mathbf{x}) > 0 \quad \left( \sup_{\|\mathbf{x}\| \ge r} V(\mathbf{x}) < 0 \right) , \qquad (3.14)$$

then  $V(\mathbf{x})$  is called *positive (negative) definite*.

If  $V(\mathbf{x})$  in condition (3) satisfies only the following conditions:

(3)  $V(\mathbf{x}) \ge 0, (V(\mathbf{x}) \le 0) \text{ for } \mathbf{x} \in \mathcal{D} - \{\mathbf{0}\},\$ 

then  $V(\mathbf{x})$  is called *(locally)* positive *(negative)* semidefinite.

*Exercise* 3.3. Which of the following functions are positive (negative) (semi)definite?

$$V(x_1, x_2, x_3) = x_1^2 + x_2^2 + 3x_3^4$$
(3.15a)

$$V(x_1, x_2, x_3) = -x_1^2 - x_2^4 - ax_3^2 + x_3^4, \qquad a > 0$$
(3.15b)

$$V(x_1, x_2, x_3) = (x_1 + x_2)^2$$
(3.15c)

$$V(x_1, x_2, x_3) = x_1 - 2x_2 + x_3^2$$
(3.15d)

$$V(x_1, x_2, x_3) = x_1^2 \exp\left(-x_1^2\right) + x_2^2$$
(3.15e)

In analogy to the electrical example in Figure 3.3, one now tries to construct a positive definite function  $V(\mathbf{x})$  (corresponding to the energy function), the so-called *Lyapunov* function, whose time derivative is negative definite. For the temporal change of  $V(\mathbf{x})$  along a trajectory  $\Phi_t(\mathbf{x}_0)$  of (3.1), the following holds:

$$\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t}V(\mathbf{\Phi}_t(\mathbf{x}_0)) = \frac{\partial}{\partial \mathbf{x}}V(\mathbf{\Phi}_t(\mathbf{x}_0))\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t}\mathbf{\Phi}_t(\mathbf{x}_0) 
= \frac{\partial}{\partial \mathbf{x}}V(\mathbf{x})\mathbf{f}(\mathbf{x}) .$$
(3.16)

Figure 3.4 illustrates this fact using the *level sets*  $V(\mathbf{x}) = c$  for various positive constants c.



Figure 3.4: Constructing a Lyapunov function.

*Exercise* 3.4. Show that for second-order systems, the level sets near the equilibrium point are always ellipses. (This also justifies the choice of the schematic representation in Figure 3.4.)

Now we are able to formulate Lyapunov's direct method:

**Theorem 3.1** (Lyapunov's Direct Method). Let  $\mathbf{x}_R = \mathbf{0}$  be an equilibrium point of (3.1) and  $\mathcal{D} \subseteq \mathbb{R}^n$  be an open neighborhood of  $\mathbf{0}$ . If there exists a function  $V(\mathbf{x}) : \mathcal{D} \to \mathbb{R}$  such that  $V(\mathbf{x})$  is positive definite on  $\mathcal{D}$  and  $\dot{V}(\mathbf{x})$  is negative semidefinite on  $\mathcal{D}$ , then the equilibrium point  $\mathbf{x}_R = \mathbf{0}$  is stable. If  $\dot{V}(\mathbf{x})$  is even negative definite, then the equilibrium point  $\mathbf{x}_R = \mathbf{0}$  is asymptotically stable. The function  $V(\mathbf{x})$  is then called a Lyapunov function.

The proof of this theorem is not provided here but can be found in the literature referenced at the end. It should be noted at this point that using the level sets of Figure 3.4 can help illustrate the statement of Theorem 3.1.

*Exercise* 3.5. Consider an RLC network described by the following system of differential equations:

$$\begin{bmatrix} \dot{\mathbf{x}}_C \\ \dot{\mathbf{x}}_L \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{C} & \mathbf{0} \\ \mathbf{0} & \mathbf{L} \end{bmatrix}^{-1} \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{R}_{11} & \mathbf{R}_{12} \\ \mathbf{R}_{21} & \mathbf{R}_{22} \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{x}_C \\ \mathbf{x}_L \end{bmatrix}$$
(3.17)

Here,  $\mathbf{x}_C$  denotes the vector of capacitor voltages and  $\mathbf{x}_L$  denotes the vector of inductance currents. The diagonal matrix  $\mathbf{C}$  contains all capacitor values, and the positive definite matrix  $\mathbf{L}$  consists of self and mutual inductances. The matrices  $\mathbf{R}_{11}$  and  $\mathbf{R}_{22}$  are symmetric, and  $\mathbf{R}_{12} = -\mathbf{R}_{21}^{\mathrm{T}}$ . Show that for negative definite matrices  $\mathbf{R}_{11}$  and  $\mathbf{R}_{22}$ , the equilibrium point  $\mathbf{x}_C = \mathbf{x}_L = \mathbf{0}$  is asymptotically stable.

**Tip:** Use as a Lyapunov function the total energy stored in the energy storage elements:  $V(\mathbf{x}_C, \mathbf{x}_L) = \frac{1}{2}\mathbf{x}_C^{\mathrm{T}}\mathbf{C}\mathbf{x}_C + \frac{1}{2}\mathbf{x}_L^{\mathrm{T}}\mathbf{L}\mathbf{x}_L.$ 

Note that the failure of a candidate for  $V(\mathbf{x})$  does *not* imply the instability of the equilibrium point. In such a case, a different function  $V(\mathbf{x})$  must be chosen. However, the existence of a Lyapunov function is always guaranteed if the equilibrium point is stable in the Lyapunov sense, i.e., the main challenge is to find a suitable Lyapunov function  $V(\mathbf{x})$ . In most technical-physical applications, the Lyapunov function can be obtained from *physical considerations* by considering the stored energy in the system as a suitable candidate. If this is not possible, for example, if the physical structure is partially destroyed by control, then other methods must be used accordingly.

In the case of a scalar system of the form

$$\dot{x} = -f(x) \tag{3.18}$$

with continuous f(x), f(0) = 0, and xf(x) > 0 for all  $x \neq 0$  with  $x \in (-a, a)$ , one chooses candidates for the Lyapunov function as

$$V(x) = \int_{0}^{x} f(z)dz .$$
 (3.19)

Obviously,  $V(\mathbf{x})$  is positive definite on the interval (-a, a) and for the time derivative of

Lecture Nonlinear Dynamical Systems and Control (SS 2025) ©A. Deutschmann-Olek and A. Kugi, Institut für Automatisierungs- und Regelungstechnik, TU Wien

 $V(\mathbf{x})$  we have

$$\dot{V}(x) = f(x)(-f(x)) = -f^2(x) < 0 \tag{3.20}$$

for all  $x \neq 0$  with  $x \in (-a, a)$ . This proves the asymptotic stability of the equilibrium  $x_R = 0$ .

*Exercise* 3.6. Show that a single-input system with an asymptotically stable equilibrium  $x_R = 0$  can always be written in the form of (3.18) in a sufficiently small neighborhood  $\mathcal{D} = \{x \in \mathbb{R} | -a < x < a\}$  around the equilibrium, with the condition xf(x) > 0 for all  $x \in \mathcal{D} - \{0\}$ .

#### 3.1.4 Basin of Attraction

Although stability of an equilibrium can be assessed using the above methods, the allowed deviation  $\mathbf{x}_0$  from the equilibrium  $\mathbf{0}$  is only known to be sufficiently small. To quantitatively classify these possible deviations, the so-called basin of attraction is defined.

**Definition 3.5** (Basin of Attraction). Let  $\mathbf{x}_R = \mathbf{0}$  be an asymptotically stable equilibrium of (3.1). Then the set

$$\mathcal{E} = \left\{ \mathbf{x}_0 \in \mathbb{R}^n | \lim_{t \to \infty} \mathbf{\Phi}_t(\mathbf{x}_0) = \mathbf{0} \right\}$$
(3.21)

is called the basin of attraction of  $\mathbf{x}_R = \mathbf{0}$ . If  $\mathcal{E} = \mathbb{R}^n$ , then the equilibrium  $\mathbf{x}_R = \mathbf{0}$  is globally asymptotically stable.

If one can show that the Lyapunov function  $V(\mathbf{x})$  is positive definite on a domain  $\mathcal{X}$ and  $\dot{V}(\mathbf{x})$  is negative definite on a domain  $\mathcal{Y}$ , where the domains  $\mathcal{X}$  and  $\mathcal{Y}$  include the equilibrium  $\mathbf{x}_R = \mathbf{0}$ , then a simple estimation of the basin of attraction is given by the largest *level set* 

$$\mathcal{L}_c = \{ \mathbf{x} \in \mathbb{R}^n | \ V(\mathbf{x}) \le c \}$$
(3.22)

for which  $\mathcal{L}_c \subset \mathcal{X} \cap \mathcal{Y}$ .

*Exercise* 3.7. Show that  $\mathcal{L}_c \subset \mathcal{X} \cap \mathcal{Y}$  being a positively invariant set according to Definition 3.6. Provide a justification for why this is indeed a suitable estimation of the basin of attraction.

When proving global asymptotic stability, fundamental difficulties arise as for large c, the level sets (3.22) may no longer be *closed and bounded* (*compact*). If this property is lost, the level sets are no longer positively invariant sets and hence not suitable estimates for the basin of attraction. An example of this is given by the Lyapunov function

$$V(\mathbf{x}) = \frac{x_1^2}{(1+x_1^2)} + x_2^2 \tag{3.23}$$

As can be seen from Figure 3.5, the level sets  $\mathcal{L}_c$  are compact for small c, which directly follows from the fact that  $V(\mathbf{x})$  is positive definite. In order for the level

Lecture Nonlinear Dynamical Systems and Control (SS 2025) ©A. Deutschmann-Olek and A. Kugi, Institut für Automatisierungs- und Regelungstechnik, TU Wien



Figure 3.5: Regarding the compactness of level sets.

sets  $\mathcal{L}_c$  to be completely contained in a region  $\mathcal{B}_r = \{\mathbf{x} \in \mathbb{R}^n | \|\mathbf{x}\| < r\}$ , the condition  $c < \min_{\|\mathbf{x}\|=r} V(\mathbf{x}) < \infty$  must be satisfied, i.e., if

$$l = \lim_{r \to \infty} \min_{\|\mathbf{x}\| = r} V(\mathbf{x}) < \infty , \qquad (3.24)$$

then the level sets  $\mathcal{L}_c$  for c < l are compact. For the Lyapunov function (3.23), it follows that

$$l = \lim_{r \to \infty} \min_{\|\mathbf{x}\| = r} \left( \frac{x_1^2}{(1 + x_1^2)} + x_2^2 \right)$$
  
= 
$$\lim_{|x_1| \to \infty} \frac{x_1^2}{(1 + x_1^2)}$$
  
= 1, (3.25)

which means that the level sets are compact only for c < 1. To ensure that the level sets  $\mathcal{L}_c$  are compact for all c > 0, the additional requirement

$$\lim_{\|\mathbf{x}\| \to \infty} V(\mathbf{x}) = \infty \tag{3.26}$$

is established. A function that satisfies this condition is called *radially unbounded*. This leads to the following theorem.

**Theorem 3.2** (Global asymptotic stability). Let  $\mathbf{x}_R = \mathbf{0}$  be an equilibrium point of (3.1). If there exists a function  $V(\mathbf{x}) : \mathbb{R}^n \to \mathbb{R}$  such that  $V(\mathbf{x})$  is positive definite,  $\dot{V}(\mathbf{x})$  is negative definite, and  $V(\mathbf{x})$  is radially unbounded, then the equilibrium point  $\mathbf{x}_R = \mathbf{0}$  is globally asymptotically stable.

Again, for the detailed proof, one should refer to the literature.

Consider the dynamic system shown in Figure 3.6 with  $T_1$ ,  $T_2 > 0$ , and the saturation

Lecture Nonlinear Dynamical Systems and Control (SS 2025) ©A. Deutschmann-Olek and A. Kugi, Institut für Automatisierungs- und Regelungstechnik, TU Wien

characteristic

$$F(x_1) = \begin{cases} -1 & \text{for } x_1 \le -1 \\ x_1 & \text{for } -1 < x_1 < 1 \\ 1 & \text{for } x_1 \ge 1 \end{cases}$$
(3.27)

or

$$\frac{x_1}{F(x_1)} = \begin{cases} -x_1 & \text{for } x_1 \le -1\\ 1 & \text{for } -1 < x_1 < 1\\ x_1 & \text{for } x_1 \ge 1 \end{cases}$$
(3.28)



Figure 3.6: Block diagram of the analyzed dynamic system.

The corresponding mathematical model is

$$\dot{x}_1 = \frac{1}{T_1} (F(x_1)x_2 - x_1)$$
 (3.29a)

$$\dot{x}_2 = \frac{1}{T_2} \left( x_2^3 x_1 - x_2 \right) .$$
 (3.29b)

Now, if we choose candidates for the Lyapunov function as

$$V(\mathbf{x}) = a^2 x_1^2 + b^2 x_2^2, \qquad a, b \neq 0 , \qquad (3.30)$$

then we obtain the expression for  $\dot{V}(\mathbf{x})$  as

$$\dot{V}(\mathbf{x}) = x_1^2 \frac{2a^2}{T_1} \left( \frac{F(x_1)}{x_1} x_2 - 1 \right) + x_2^2 \frac{2b^2}{T_2} \left( x_2^2 x_1 - 1 \right) \,. \tag{3.31}$$

Obviously,  $\dot{V}(\mathbf{x})$  is negative definite for

$$x_2 < \frac{x_1}{F(x_1)}$$
 and  $x_1 < \frac{1}{x_2^2}$  (3.32)

Lecture Nonlinear Dynamical Systems and Control (SS 2025) ©A. Deutschmann-Olek and A. Kugi, Institut für Automatisierungs- und Regelungstechnik, TU Wien

To estimate the basin of attraction, a level set  $\mathcal{L}_c = \{ \mathbf{x} \in \mathbb{R}^2 | V(\mathbf{x}) \leq c \}$  is sought where  $\dot{V}(\mathbf{x})$  is negative definite. For this purpose, we determine the ellipse  $V(\mathbf{x}) = a^2 x_1^2 + b^2 x_2^2 = (\sqrt{c})^2$ , which touches the curves (3.32). The point of tangency between the ellipse

$$\frac{x_1^2}{\left(\sqrt{c}/a\right)^2} + \frac{x_2^2}{\left(\sqrt{c}/b\right)^2} = 1$$
(3.33)

and the saturation characteristic  $x_2 = \frac{x_1}{F(x_1)}$  immediately yields the relationship  $\sqrt{c}/b = 1$ . To determine the second point of tangency, we use the fact that at the point of tangency of the two curves

$$\frac{x_1^2}{\left(\sqrt{c}/a\right)^2} + x_2^2 = 1 \quad \text{and} \quad x_1 = \frac{1}{x_2^2}$$
(3.34)

the slopes

$$\frac{2x_1 \, \mathrm{d}x_1}{\left(\sqrt{c}/a\right)^2} + 2x_2 \, \mathrm{d}x_2 = 0 \quad \text{and} \quad \mathrm{d}x_1 = \frac{-2 \, \mathrm{d}x_2}{x_2^3} \tag{3.35}$$

and

$$\frac{\mathrm{d}x_2}{\mathrm{d}x_1} = \frac{-x_1}{x_2(\sqrt{c}/a)^2} \quad \text{and} \quad \frac{\mathrm{d}x_2}{\mathrm{d}x_1} = \frac{-x_2^3}{2} \tag{3.36}$$

must be equal. From (3.34) and (3.36) it follows that

$$\frac{-x_1}{\left(\sqrt{c}/a\right)^2} = \frac{-x_2^4}{2} \quad \text{and} \quad x_2^4 = \frac{1}{x_1^2}$$
(3.37)

and thus

$$x_1^3 = \frac{\left(\sqrt{c}/a\right)^2}{2} \ . \tag{3.38}$$

Substituting (3.38) into (3.34), we obtain

$$\sqrt{c}/a = \frac{3\sqrt{3}}{2}$$
 (3.39)

Thus, an estimation of the basin of attraction is calculated as the interior of the ellipse

$$\frac{x_1^2}{\frac{27}{4}} + x_2^2 = 1 . (3.40)$$

Figure 3.7 shows the graphical representation of the situation.

*Exercise* 3.8. The following dynamic system is given

$$\dot{x}_1 = \frac{-6x_1}{u^2} + 2x_2, \qquad u = 1 + x_1^2$$
 (3.41a)

$$\dot{x}_2 = \frac{-2(x_1 + x_2)}{u^2}$$
. (3.41b)

(1) Calculate the equilibrium(s) of the system (3.41). Show that for all  $\mathbf{x} \in \mathbb{R}^2$ ,



Figure 3.7: Calculation of the basin of attraction of Figure 3.6.

$$V(\mathbf{x}) > 0$$
 and  $\dot{V}(\mathbf{x}) < 0$  for

$$V(\mathbf{x}) = \frac{x_1^2}{1+x_1^2} + x_2^2 . \qquad (3.42)$$

(2) Are the equilibrium(s) stable, asymptotically stable, globally stable, or globally asymptotically stable?

*Exercise* 3.9. The following dynamic system is given:

$$\dot{x}_1 = -x_1 + 2x_1^3 x_2 \tag{3.43a}$$

$$\dot{x}_2 = -x_2$$
. (3.43b)

- (1) Show that the equilibrium  $\mathbf{x}_R = \mathbf{0}$  is asymptotically stable.
- (2) Provide the largest possible estimate of the basin of attraction.

## 3.1.5 The Invariance Principle

Expanding on Theorem 3.1, there are systems where the equilibrium  $\mathbf{x}_R = \mathbf{0}$  is asymptotically stable even though the time derivative of the Lyapunov function  $\dot{V}(\mathbf{x})$  is only negative semidefinite. As an example, consider the simple spring-mass-damper system shown in Figure 3.8 with mass m, linear damping force  $F_d = d\frac{d}{dt}z$ , d > 0, and nonlinear spring force  $F_c = \psi_F(z)$  satisfying  $k_1 z^2 \leq \psi_F(z) z \leq k_2 z^2$  with  $0 < k_1 < k_2$ .

Lecture Nonlinear Dynamical Systems and Control (SS 2025) ©A. Deutschmann-Olek and A. Kugi, Institut für Automatisierungs- und Regelungstechnik, TU Wien



Figure 3.8: Simple mechanical system.

The equations of motion are

$$\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t}z = v \tag{3.44a}$$

$$\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t}v = -\frac{1}{m}(\psi_F(z) + dv) \tag{3.44b}$$

with the state  $\mathbf{x}^{\mathrm{T}} = [z, v]$  and the only equilibrium  $\mathbf{x}_{R} = \mathbf{0}$ . The kinetic and potential energy stored in the system

$$V = \frac{1}{2}mv^2 + \int_0^z \psi_F(w) \,\mathrm{d}w$$
 (3.45)

are naturally positive definite and serve as suitable candidates for a Lyapunov function. Clearly,

$$\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t}V = mv\left(-\frac{1}{m}(\psi_F(z) + dv)\right) + \psi_F(z)v = -dv^2 \tag{3.46}$$

is negative semidefinite, and according to Theorem 3.1, we can conclude that the equilibrium  $\mathbf{x}_R = \mathbf{0}$  is stable in the sense of Lyapunov. That is, the energy V stored in the system always decreases, except when v = 0 where it remains constant. Substituting v = 0into (3.44), we see that  $z = \overline{z}$  and  $\frac{d}{dt}v = -\frac{1}{m}\psi_F(\overline{z})$  for a constant  $\overline{z}$ . From the specific form of the characteristic curve  $\psi_F(z)$  in Figure 3.8, it follows that  $\frac{d}{dt}v$  only becomes zero for  $\overline{z} = 0$ . This demonstrates that the energy V stored in the system must decrease until the point z = v = 0 is reached, proving the asymptotic stability of the equilibrium.

The mathematical generalization of this procedure leads to the so-called Invariance Principle of Krassovskii-LaSalle. Before this is discussed in more detail, the concepts of limit points and limit sets should be explained. Without loss of generality, consider again the autonomous, smooth nth-order system

$$\dot{\mathbf{x}} = \mathbf{f}(\mathbf{x}) \tag{3.47}$$

with the flow  $\Phi_t(\mathbf{x})$  according to (3.1).

Lecture Nonlinear Dynamical Systems and Control (SS 2025) ©A. Deutschmann-Olek and A. Kugi, Institut für Automatisierungs- und Regelungstechnik, TU Wien

**Definition 3.6** (Positively Invariant Set). A set  $M \subset \mathbb{R}^n$  is called a *positively invariant set* of the system (3.47) if the image of set M under the flow  $\Phi_t$  is the set M itself, i.e.,  $\Phi_t(M) \subseteq M$ , for all t > 0.

Simple examples of a positively invariant set are the set  $\{\mathbf{x}_R\}$  with  $\mathbf{x}_R$  as an equilibrium point, the set of points of a limit cycle, etc. A set M is called a *negatively invariant set* of the system (3.47) if  $\mathbf{\Phi}_{-t}(M)$  is positively invariant. Also of interest are points that are approached arbitrarily closely by a trajectory an infinite number of times. For this, the following definition is given:

**Definition 3.7** (Limit Point and Limit Set). A point  $\mathbf{y} \in \mathbb{R}^n$  is called an  $\omega$ -limit point of  $\mathbf{x}$  of the system (3.47) if there exists a sequence  $(t_i)$  of real numbers from the interval  $[0, \infty)$  with  $t_i \to \infty$  such that

$$\lim_{i \to \infty} \|\mathbf{y} - \mathbf{\Phi}_{t_i}(\mathbf{x})\| = 0 \tag{3.48}$$

holds. The set of all  $\omega$ -limit points of  $\mathbf{x}$ , the so-called  $\omega$ -limit set of  $\mathbf{x}$ , is denoted by  $L_{\omega}(\mathbf{x})$ .

Equivalently to the above definition, limit points and limit sets can be considered for t < 0. In this case, the designations  $\alpha$ -limit point and  $\alpha$ -limit set  $L_{\alpha}(\mathbf{x})$  are used.

**Definition 3.8** (Limit Cycle). A *limit cycle* of (3.47) is a *closed trajectory*  $\gamma$  that satisfies the conditions  $\gamma \subset L_{\omega}(\mathbf{x})$  or  $\gamma \subset L_{\alpha}(\mathbf{x})$  for certain  $\mathbf{x} \in \mathbb{R}^n$ . In the first case, the limit cycle is called an  $\omega$ -*limit cycle*, and in the second case, an  $\alpha$ -*limit cycle*.

In Figure 3.9, the concepts of limit set and limit cycle are illustrated based on a schematic representation of the trajectories of the Van der Pol oscillator. Here,  $\gamma$  describes the unique closed trajectory that, for every point  $\mathbf{x} \in \mathbb{R}^2$  except for the point  $\mathbf{x}_A$ , forms the  $\omega$ -limit set  $L_{\omega}(\mathbf{x})$ , i.e.,  $\gamma$  describes an  $\omega$ -limit cycle. Furthermore, the point  $\mathbf{x}_A$  is the  $\alpha$ -limit set  $L_{\alpha}(\mathbf{x})$  for every point  $\mathbf{x}$  inside  $\gamma$ . If  $\mathbf{x}$  is outside  $\gamma$ , then  $L_{\alpha}(\mathbf{x}) = \{\}$ .



Figure 3.9: Limit points and limit sets.

With these concepts, it is now possible to formulate the invariance principle of Krassovskii-LaSalle.

**Theorem 3.3** (Auxiliary lemma for the invariance theorem). If the solution  $\mathbf{x}(t) = \mathbf{\Phi}_t(\mathbf{x}_0)$  of the system (3.1) is bounded for  $t \ge 0$ , then the  $\omega$ -limit set  $L_{\omega}(\mathbf{x}_0)$  of  $\mathbf{x}_0$  according to Definition 3.7 is a nonempty, compact (bounded and closed), positively invariant set with the property

$$\lim_{t \to \infty} \mathbf{\Phi}_t(\mathbf{x}_0) \in L_\omega(\mathbf{x}_0) \ . \tag{3.49}$$

The proof of this theorem can be found in the literature cited at the end.

**Theorem 3.4** (Invariance principle of Krassovskii-LaSalle). Assume  $\mathcal{X}$  is a compact, positively invariant set and  $V : \mathcal{X} \to \mathbb{R}$  is a continuously differentiable function that satisfies  $\dot{V}(\mathbf{x}) \leq 0$  on  $\mathcal{X}$ . Let  $\mathcal{Y}$  be the subset of  $\mathcal{X}$  for which  $\mathcal{Y} = \{\mathbf{x} \in \mathcal{X} | \dot{V}(\mathbf{x}) = 0\}$ . If  $\mathcal{M}$  denotes the largest positively invariant set of  $\mathcal{Y}$ , then

$$L_{\omega}(\mathcal{X}) \subseteq \mathcal{M}$$
 . (3.50)

The proof of this theorem can also be found in the literature cited at the end. As seen from Theorem 3.4,  $V(\mathbf{x})$  does not need to be positive definite. The difficulty here lies in finding the compact, positively invariant set  $\mathcal{X}$ . However, it is known from Section 3.1.4 that the level set of a positive definite function  $V(\mathbf{x})$  is locally compact and positively invariant. If radial unboundedness can be proven, then this holds globally. Thus, it is possible to formulate the following theorem as a direct consequence of Theorem 3.4.

**Theorem 3.5** (Application of the Invariance Theorem). Let  $\mathbf{x}_R = \mathbf{0}$  be an equilibrium point of (3.1) and  $\mathcal{D} \subseteq \mathbb{R}^n$  be an open neighborhood of  $\mathbf{0}$ . If there exists a function  $V(\mathbf{x}) : \mathcal{D} \to \mathbb{R}$  such that  $V(\mathbf{x})$  is positive definite on  $\mathcal{D}$  and  $\dot{V}(\mathbf{x})$  is negative semidefinite on  $\mathcal{D}$ , then the point  $\mathbf{x}_R = \mathbf{0}$  is asymptotically stable if the largest positively invariant subset of  $\mathcal{Y} = \{\mathbf{x} \in \mathcal{D} | \dot{V}(\mathbf{x}) = 0\}$  is the set  $\mathcal{M} = \{\mathbf{0}\}$ . Furthermore, if  $V(\mathbf{x})$ is radially unbounded, then  $\mathbf{x}_R = \mathbf{0}$  is globally asymptotically stable.

Referring to the spring-mass-damper system in Figure 3.8, consider the example

$$\dot{x}_1 = x_2 \tag{3.51a}$$

$$\dot{x}_2 = -g(x_1) - h(x_2) \tag{3.51b}$$

with

$$g(0) = 0, \qquad x_1 g(x_1) > 0 \text{ for } x_1 \neq 0, \qquad x_1 \in (-a, a)$$

$$(3.52)$$

$$h(0) = 0, \qquad x_2 h(x_2) > 0 \text{ for } x_2 \neq 0, \qquad x_2 \in (-a, a)$$
 (3.53)

being examined. It is assumed that  $g(x_1)$  and  $h(x_2)$  are continuous on the interval (-a, a). It can be easily verified that  $\mathbf{x}_R = \mathbf{0}$  in the set  $\mathcal{D} = \{\mathbf{x} \in \mathbb{R}^2 | -a < x_1 < a, -a < x_2 < a\}$  is the only equilibrium point. A candidate for a Lyapunov function is chosen as

$$V(\mathbf{x}) = \int_{0}^{x_1} g(x) \,\mathrm{d}x + \frac{x_2^2}{2} \tag{3.54}$$

Lecture Nonlinear Dynamical Systems and Control (SS 2025) ©A. Deutschmann-Olek and A. Kugi, Institut für Automatisierungs- und Regelungstechnik, TU Wien

Clearly,  $V(\mathbf{x})$  is positive definite on  $\mathcal{D}$  and for  $\dot{V}$  we have

$$\dot{V}(\mathbf{x}) = g(x_1)\dot{x}_1 + x_2\dot{x}_2 = -x_2h(x_2) \le 0$$
 (3.55)

In this example, the set  $\mathcal{Y} = \left\{ \mathbf{x} \in \mathcal{D} | \dot{V}(\mathbf{x}) = 0 \right\}$  simplifies to  $\mathcal{Y} = \{ \mathbf{x} \in \mathcal{D} | x_1 \text{ arbitrary and } x_2 = 0 \}$ . Therefore, for the solution curves to remain in  $\mathcal{Y}$  for all times  $t \ge 0$ , it follows immediately that  $x_1 = 0$ , meaning the largest positively invariant subset of  $\mathcal{Y}$  is the set  $\mathcal{M} = \{\mathbf{0}\}$ . Hence, according to Theorem 3.5, the equilibrium point  $\mathbf{x}_R = \mathbf{0}$  is asymptotically stable.

*Exercise* 3.10. Given is a first-order dynamic system

$$\dot{x}_1 = ax_1 + u \tag{3.56}$$

with an adaptive control law

$$\dot{x}_2 = \gamma x_1^2, \qquad \gamma > 0 \tag{3.57a}$$

$$u = -x_2 x_1$$
. (3.57b)

Show using the invariance principle of Krassovskii-LaSalle that for the closed loop system,  $\lim_{t\to\infty} x_1(t) = 0$  regardless of the plant parameter a. It is only known that the parameter a is bounded from above by a < b.

Tip: Choose as a candidate for the Lyapunov function

$$V(\mathbf{x}) = \frac{1}{2}x_1^2 + \frac{1}{2\gamma}(x_2 - b)^2, \qquad b > a .$$
(3.58)

#### 3.1.6 Linear Systems

The stability analysis of linear systems

$$\dot{\mathbf{x}} = \mathbf{A}\mathbf{x} \tag{3.59}$$

can be carried out based on the eigenvalues of the matrix **A**. By means of a regular state transformation  $\mathbf{z} = \mathbf{T}\mathbf{x}$ , the system can be transformed to *Jordan normal form* 

$$\dot{\mathbf{z}} = \mathbf{J}\mathbf{z} \tag{3.60}$$

with

$$\mathbf{J} = \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{J}_1 & \mathbf{0} & \cdots & \mathbf{0} \\ \mathbf{0} & \mathbf{J}_2 & \ddots & \vdots \\ \vdots & \ddots & \ddots & \mathbf{0} \\ \mathbf{0} & \cdots & \mathbf{0} & \mathbf{J}_n \end{bmatrix}$$
(3.61)

A Jordan block  $\mathbf{J}_i$  has the form

$$\mathbf{J}_{i} = \begin{bmatrix} a_{i} & 1 & 0 & \cdots & 0 \\ 0 & a_{i} & \ddots & \ddots & \vdots \\ \vdots & \ddots & \ddots & \ddots & 0 \\ \vdots & & \ddots & a_{i} & 1 \\ 0 & \cdots & \cdots & 0 & a_{i} \end{bmatrix}_{m \times m}$$
(3.62)

for an  $m\text{-}\mathrm{fold}$  real eigenvalue  $\lambda_i=a_i$  of the matrix  $\mathbf A$  or

$$\mathbf{J}_{i} = \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{A}_{i} & \mathbf{I} & \mathbf{0} & \cdots & \mathbf{0} \\ \mathbf{0} & \mathbf{A}_{i} & \ddots & \ddots & \vdots \\ \vdots & \ddots & \ddots & \ddots & \mathbf{0} \\ \vdots & & \ddots & \mathbf{A}_{i} & \mathbf{I} \\ \mathbf{0} & \cdots & \cdots & \mathbf{0} & \mathbf{A}_{i} \end{bmatrix}_{2m \times 2m}, \qquad \mathbf{A}_{i} = \begin{bmatrix} a_{i} & -b_{i} \\ b_{i} & a_{i} \end{bmatrix}$$
(3.63)

for an *m*-fold complex conjugate eigenvalue  $\lambda_i = a_i \pm jb_i$  of the matrix **A**.

*Exercise* 3.11. How should the transformation matrix  $\mathbf{T}$  look like in order to obtain the Jordan form?

Tip: Eigenvectors

Now, the following theorem holds for stability according to Lyapunov:

**Theorem 3.6** (Stability of Linear Systems). The equilibrium  $\mathbf{x}_R = \mathbf{0}$  of (3.59) is stable in the sense of Lyapunov if and only if for each Jordan block  $\mathbf{J}_i$  of (3.60),  $a_i < 0$  or  $a_i \leq 0$  and m = 1. If  $a_i < 0$  holds for each Jordan block  $\mathbf{J}_i$  of (3.60), then the equilibrium  $\mathbf{x}_R = \mathbf{0}$  is asymptotically stable.

*Exercise* 3.12. Prove Theorem 3.6.

Two more definitions are needed for the subsequent considerations.

**Definition 3.9** (Hurwitz Matrix). An  $(n \times n)$  matrix **A** is called a *Hurwitz matrix* if for all eigenvalues  $\lambda_i$  of **A**,  $\operatorname{Re}(\lambda_i) < 0$  for  $i = 1, \ldots, n$ .

**Definition 3.10** (Positive Definite Matrix). A symmetric  $(n \times n)$  matrix **P** is called *positive definite* if  $\mathbf{x}^{T}\mathbf{P}\mathbf{x} > 0$  for all  $\mathbf{x} \in \mathbb{R}^{n} - \{\mathbf{0}\}$ . If  $\mathbf{x}^{T}\mathbf{P}\mathbf{x} \ge 0$ , then **P** is called *positive semidefinite*.

*Exercise* 3.13. Where are the eigenvalues of a positive (semi)definite matrix located? Prove your statements.

Now, if we choose candidates for a Lyapunov function of (3.59) as

$$V(\mathbf{x}) = \mathbf{x}^{\mathrm{T}} \mathbf{P} \mathbf{x} \tag{3.64}$$

with a positive definite matrix  $\mathbf{P}$ , then for V we have

$$\dot{V}(\mathbf{x}) = \dot{\mathbf{x}}^{\mathrm{T}} \mathbf{P} \mathbf{x} + \mathbf{x}^{\mathrm{T}} \mathbf{P} \dot{\mathbf{x}}$$
$$= \mathbf{x}^{\mathrm{T}} \Big( \mathbf{A}^{\mathrm{T}} \mathbf{P} + \mathbf{P} \mathbf{A} \Big) \mathbf{x}$$
$$= -\mathbf{x}^{\mathrm{T}} \mathbf{Q} \mathbf{x}$$
(3.65)

with a square matrix  $\mathbf{Q}$  that satisfies the relationship

$$\mathbf{A}^{\mathrm{T}}\mathbf{P} + \mathbf{P}\mathbf{A} + \mathbf{Q} = \mathbf{0} \tag{3.66}$$

(3.66) is also called the Lyapunov equation.

*Exercise* 3.14. Show that the Lyapunov equation (3.66) is a linear equation in the elements  $p_{ij}$  of **P**.

If the matrix  $\mathbf{Q}$  is positive definite, then from Theorem 3.1, it follows that the equilibrium  $\mathbf{x}_R = \mathbf{0}$  is asymptotically stable and consequently  $\mathbf{A}$  is a Hurwitz matrix. That is, for a given positive definite matrix  $\mathbf{P}$ , the matrix  $\mathbf{Q}$  is computed for system (3.59) and checked for positive definiteness. For linear systems, this procedure can be reversed. A positive definite  $\mathbf{Q}$  is specified, and  $\mathbf{P}$  is computed accordingly. The following theorem states:

Lecture Nonlinear Dynamical Systems and Control (SS 2025) ©A. Deutschmann-Olek and A. Kugi, Institut für Automatisierungs- und Regelungstechnik, TU Wien

**Theorem 3.7** (Lyapunov Equation). The matrix  $\mathbf{A}$  is a Hurwitz matrix if and only if the Lyapunov equation (3.66) has a positive definite solution  $\mathbf{P}$  for every positive definite  $\mathbf{Q}$ . In this case,  $\mathbf{P}$  is uniquely determined.

*Proof.* ( $\Leftarrow$ ): Follows trivially from Theorem 3.1. ( $\Rightarrow$ ): If **A** is a Hurwitz matrix, then the existence of the integral

$$\mathbf{P} = \int_{0}^{\infty} \mathrm{e}^{\mathbf{A}^{\mathrm{T}}t} \mathbf{Q} \mathrm{e}^{\mathbf{A}t} \,\mathrm{d}t \tag{3.67}$$

is guaranteed. Furthermore, if  ${\bf Q}$  is positive definite, then this must also hold for  ${\bf P},$  because from

$$\mathbf{x}^{\mathrm{T}}\mathbf{P}\mathbf{x} = 0 \tag{3.68}$$

it follows

$$\int_{0}^{\infty} \underbrace{\mathbf{x}^{\mathrm{T}} \mathrm{e}^{\mathbf{A}^{\mathrm{T}} t} \mathbf{Q} \mathrm{e}^{\mathbf{A} t}}_{>0} \mathrm{d}t = 0 . \qquad (3.69)$$

Since **Q** is positive definite,  $e^{\mathbf{A}t}\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{0}$  and due to the regularity of the transition matrix,  $\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{0}$ . The calculation

$$\mathbf{A}^{\mathrm{T}}\mathbf{P} + \mathbf{P}\mathbf{A} = \int_{0}^{\infty} \mathbf{A}^{\mathrm{T}} \mathrm{e}^{\mathbf{A}^{\mathrm{T}}t} \mathbf{Q} \mathrm{e}^{\mathbf{A}t} \, \mathrm{d}t + \int_{0}^{\infty} \mathrm{e}^{\mathbf{A}^{\mathrm{T}}t} \mathbf{Q} \mathrm{e}^{\mathbf{A}t} \, \mathrm{d}t$$
$$= \int_{0}^{\infty} \frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t} \left( \mathrm{e}^{\mathbf{A}^{\mathrm{T}}t} \mathbf{Q} \mathrm{e}^{\mathbf{A}t} \right) \, \mathrm{d}t$$
$$= \lim_{t \to \infty} \mathrm{e}^{\mathbf{A}^{\mathrm{T}}t} \mathbf{Q} \mathrm{e}^{\mathbf{A}t} - \mathbf{Q}$$
$$= -\mathbf{Q}$$
(3.70)

shows that **P** from (3.67) is indeed a solution of the Lyapunov equation (3.66). The uniqueness of the solution remains to be shown. Assuming  $\mathbf{P}_0$  is another solution of the Lyapunov equation (3.66). For the time derivative of the expression

$$\mathbf{F}(\mathbf{X}) = \mathbf{X}^{\mathrm{T}} \mathbf{P} \mathbf{X} - \mathbf{X}^{\mathrm{T}} \mathbf{P}_0 \mathbf{X} = \mathbf{X}^{\mathrm{T}} (\mathbf{P} - \mathbf{P}_0) \mathbf{X}$$
(3.71)

with  $\mathbf{X}$  as a solution of the matrix differential equation

$$\dot{\mathbf{X}} = \mathbf{A}\mathbf{X} \tag{3.72}$$

Lecture Nonlinear Dynamical Systems and Control (SS 2025) @A. Deutschmann-Olek and A. Kugi, Institut für Automatisierungs- und Regelungstechnik, TU Wien

we obtain

$$\dot{\mathbf{F}}(\mathbf{X}) = \mathbf{X}^{\mathrm{T}} \left( \underbrace{\mathbf{A}^{\mathrm{T}} \mathbf{P} + \mathbf{P} \mathbf{A}}_{-\mathbf{Q}} - \underbrace{\left(\mathbf{A}^{\mathrm{T}} \mathbf{P}_{0} + \mathbf{P}_{0} \mathbf{A}\right)}_{-\mathbf{Q}} \right) \mathbf{X} = \mathbf{0} .$$
(3.73)

Thus,  $\mathbf{F}(\mathbf{X})$  is constant along a trajectory of (3.59). From

$$\mathbf{F}\left(e^{\mathbf{A}t}\right) = e^{\mathbf{A}^{\mathrm{T}}t}(\mathbf{P} - \mathbf{P}_{0})e^{\mathbf{A}t}$$
(3.74)

we then deduce, with

$$\lim_{t \to 0} \mathbf{F} \left( e^{\mathbf{A}t} \right) = \mathbf{F}(\mathbf{I})$$

$$= (\mathbf{P} - \mathbf{P}_0)$$

$$= \lim_{t \to +\infty} \mathbf{F} \left( e^{\mathbf{A}t} \right)$$

$$= \mathbf{0}$$
(3.75)

the uniqueness of the solution of (3.66).

*Exercise* 3.15. Given are two identical linear systems of the form

$$\dot{\mathbf{x}}_{i} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1\\ -1 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \mathbf{x}_{i} + \begin{bmatrix} 0\\ 1 \end{bmatrix} u_{i}, \qquad i = 1, 2$$
(3.76a)

$$y_i = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \mathbf{x}_i \ . \tag{3.76b}$$

Check the stability of the equilibrium when the two systems are connected in series or in parallel. Provide a physical interpretation of the results when considering system (3.76) as an undamped mass-spring oscillator.

*Exercise* 3.16. Given is the linear autonomous time-invariant sampled system

$$\mathbf{x}_{k+1} = \mathbf{A}\mathbf{x}_k, \qquad \mathbf{A} \in \mathbb{R}^{n \times n}$$
 (3.77)

Show that the existence of a positive definite solution  $\mathbf{P} \in \mathbb{R}^{n \times n}$  of the inequality

$$\mathbf{A}^{\mathrm{T}}\mathbf{P}\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{P} < \mathbf{0} \tag{3.78}$$

is sufficient for  $V(\mathbf{x}) = \mathbf{x}^{\mathrm{T}} \mathbf{P} \mathbf{x}$  to be a Lyapunov function for (3.77).

Exercise 3.17. The linear system

$$\dot{\mathbf{x}} = \mathbf{A}\mathbf{x} \tag{3.79a}$$

$$\mathbf{y} = \mathbf{C}\mathbf{x} \tag{3.79b}$$

Lecture Nonlinear Dynamical Systems and Control (SS 2025) ©A. Deutschmann-Olek and A. Kugi, Institut für Automatisierungs- und Regelungstechnik, TU Wien

is completely observable. Show that  ${\bf A}$  is a Hurwitz matrix if and only if the Lyapunov equation

$$\mathbf{P}\mathbf{A} + \mathbf{A}^{\mathrm{T}}\mathbf{P} = -\mathbf{C}^{\mathrm{T}}\mathbf{C} \tag{3.80}$$

is satisfied for a positive definite  $\mathbf{P}$ . Show further that in this case, the solution for  $\mathbf{P}$  is unique.

**Tip:** Use the invariance principle of Krassovskii-LaSalle and the fact that for the observable pair  $(\mathbf{A}, \mathbf{C})$ ,  $\mathbf{C}e^{\mathbf{A}t}\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{0}$  for all  $t \ge 0$  if and only if  $\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{0}$  for all  $t \ge 0$ .

#### 3.1.7 Indirect (First) Method of Lyapunov

In addition to the second method of Lyapunov discussed in Section 3.1.3, which is essentially based on the construction of a Lyapunov function, there is also the possibility to assess the stability of an equilibrium point based on the linearized system around this equilibrium point. Consider the nonlinear autonomous system

$$\dot{\mathbf{x}} = \mathbf{f}(\mathbf{x}) \tag{3.81}$$

with equilibrium point  $\mathbf{x}_R = \mathbf{0}$ . Assuming that  $\mathbf{f}(\mathbf{x})$  is continuously differentiable on an open neighborhood  $\mathcal{D}$  of  $\mathbf{0}$ ,  $\mathbf{f}(\mathbf{x})$  can be written in the form

$$\mathbf{f}(\mathbf{x}) = \mathbf{f}(\mathbf{0}) + \frac{\partial}{\partial \mathbf{x}} \mathbf{f}(\mathbf{x}) \Big|_{\mathbf{x}=\mathbf{0}} \mathbf{x} + \mathbf{r}(\mathbf{x}), \qquad \lim_{\|\mathbf{x}\|\to 0} \frac{\|\mathbf{r}(\mathbf{x})\|}{\|\mathbf{x}\|} = 0$$
(3.82)

Then the following theorem holds:

**Theorem 3.8** (Indirect (first) Method of Lyapunov). Let  $\mathbf{x}_R = \mathbf{0}$  be an equilibrium point of (3.81) and  $\mathbf{f}(\mathbf{x})$  be continuously differentiable on an open neighborhood  $\mathcal{D} \subseteq \mathbb{R}^n$  of  $\mathbf{0}$ . With

$$\mathbf{A} = \left. \frac{\partial}{\partial \mathbf{x}} \mathbf{f}(\mathbf{x}) \right|_{\mathbf{x}=\mathbf{0}} \tag{3.83}$$

the following holds:

- (1) If all eigenvalues  $\lambda_i$  of **A** have a real part less than zero, i.e.,  $\operatorname{Re}(\lambda_i) < 0$ , then the equilibrium point is asymptotically stable.
- (2) If one eigenvalue  $\lambda_i$  of **A** satisfies  $\operatorname{Re}(\lambda_i) > 0$ , then the origin is unstable.
- (3) For eigenvalues  $\lambda_i$  of **A** with  $\operatorname{Re}(\lambda_i) = 0$ , no statement can be made about the stability of the equilibrium point of the nonlinear system.

*Proof.* To prove the first part of this theorem, the function

$$V(\mathbf{x}) = \mathbf{x}^{\mathrm{T}} \mathbf{P} \mathbf{x} \tag{3.84}$$

Lecture Nonlinear Dynamical Systems and Control (SS 2025) ©A. Deutschmann-Olek and A. Kugi, Institut für Automatisierungs- und Regelungstechnik, TU Wien

with positive definite **P** is considered as a candidate for a Lyapunov function. From (3.82), it follows for  $\dot{V}$ 

$$\dot{V}(\mathbf{x}) = \mathbf{x}^{\mathrm{T}} \mathbf{P} \mathbf{f}(\mathbf{x}) + \mathbf{f}^{\mathrm{T}}(\mathbf{x}) \mathbf{P} \mathbf{x}$$
  
=  $\mathbf{x}^{\mathrm{T}} \mathbf{P} (\mathbf{A} \mathbf{x} + \mathbf{r}(\mathbf{x})) + (\mathbf{A} \mathbf{x} + \mathbf{r}(\mathbf{x}))^{\mathrm{T}} \mathbf{P} \mathbf{x}$   
=  $\mathbf{x}^{\mathrm{T}} (\mathbf{P} \mathbf{A} + \mathbf{A}^{\mathrm{T}} \mathbf{P}) \mathbf{x} + 2 \mathbf{x}^{\mathrm{T}} \mathbf{P} \mathbf{r}(\mathbf{x}) .$  (3.85)

Since A is a Hurwitz matrix, the Lyapunov equation

$$\mathbf{P}\mathbf{A} + \mathbf{A}^{\mathrm{T}}\mathbf{P} + \mathbf{Q} = \mathbf{0} \tag{3.86}$$

has a positive definite solution **P** for every positive definite **Q**. It was also assumed that  $\mathbf{f}(\mathbf{x})$  is continuously differentiable, and therefore for every  $\varepsilon > 0$ , there exists a  $\delta > 0$  such that

$$\|\mathbf{r}(\mathbf{x})\|_2 < \varepsilon \|\mathbf{x}\|_2, \qquad \|\mathbf{x}\|_2 < \delta . \tag{3.87}$$

For a positive definite matrix  $\mathbf{P}$ , the induced 2-norm satisfies the estimate (compare to (2.55))

$$\lambda_{\min}(\mathbf{P}) \le \|\mathbf{P}\|_{i,2} \le \lambda_{\max}(\mathbf{P}) \tag{3.88}$$

with  $\lambda_{\min}(\mathbf{P}) > 0$  or  $\lambda_{\max}(\mathbf{P}) > 0$  as the smallest or largest eigenvalue of **P**. Thus, from the Cauchy-Schwarz inequality (2.82), (3.87), and (3.88), the estimate

$$\left|\mathbf{x}^{\mathrm{T}}\mathbf{Pr}(\mathbf{x})\right| \leq \|\mathbf{Pr}(\mathbf{x})\|_{2} \|\mathbf{x}\|_{2} \leq \|\mathbf{P}\|_{i,2} \underbrace{\|\mathbf{r}(\mathbf{x})\|_{2}}_{<\varepsilon \|\mathbf{x}\|_{2}} \|\mathbf{x}\|_{2} \leq \varepsilon \lambda_{\max}(\mathbf{P}) \|\mathbf{x}\|_{2}^{2}$$
(3.89)

or

$$\dot{V}(\mathbf{x}) \leq -\mathbf{x}^{\mathrm{T}} \mathbf{Q} \mathbf{x} + 2\varepsilon \lambda_{\max}(\mathbf{P}) \|\mathbf{x}\|_{2}^{2} \\
\leq (-\lambda_{\min}(\mathbf{Q}) + 2\varepsilon \lambda_{\max}(\mathbf{P})) \|\mathbf{x}\|_{2}^{2},$$
(3.90)

is obtained, and  $\dot{V}$  is definitely negative for

$$\varepsilon < \frac{\lambda_{\min}(\mathbf{Q})}{2\lambda_{\max}(\mathbf{P})}$$
(3.91)

This proves, according to Theorem 3.1, the asymptotic stability of the equilibrium  $\mathbf{x}_R = \mathbf{0}$ . The proof of the second part of Theorem 3.8 is not carried out here but can be found in the corresponding literature.

*Exercise* 3.18. Search in the literature provided at the end for Lyapunov instability theorems and apply them to prove the second part of Theorem 3.8.

If the linearized system has eigenvalues  $\lambda_i$  with  $\operatorname{Re}(\lambda_i) = 0$ , then the indirect method

Lecture Nonlinear Dynamical Systems and Control (SS 2025) ©A. Deutschmann-Olek and A. Kugi, Institut für Automatisierungs- und Regelungstechnik, TU Wien

does not allow any statement. Consider the nonlinear single-input system

$$\dot{x} = ax^3 \tag{3.92}$$

with the system linearized around the equilibrium  $x_R = 0$ 

$$\dot{x} = 0 \ . \tag{3.93}$$

Choosing candidates for a Lyapunov function as

$$V(x) = x^4 \tag{3.94}$$

and obtaining  $\dot{V}$  as

$$\dot{V}(x) = 4ax^6$$
 . (3.95)

It is easy to see that the origin is asymptotically stable for a < 0 but unstable for a > 0. For a = 0, the system is linear and has infinitely many equilibrium points.

*Exercise* 3.19. Examine the stability of the equilibrium point(s) for systems (3.9), (3.29), (3.41), and (3.43) using the indirect method of Lyapunov.

## 3.2 Non-autonomous Systems

The following considerations are based on the non-autonomous nonlinear system

$$\dot{\mathbf{x}} = \mathbf{f}(t, \mathbf{x}) \tag{3.96}$$

with  $\mathbf{f}: [0, \infty) \times \mathcal{D} \to \mathbb{R}^n$  piecewise continuous in t and locally Lipschitz in  $\mathbf{x}$  on  $[0, \infty) \times \mathcal{D}$ ,  $\mathcal{D} \subseteq \mathbb{R}^n$ , (compare Theorem 2.13). The error systems that arise in trajectory tracking control of nonlinear systems typically have the structure of (3.96). One calls  $\mathbf{x}_R \in \mathcal{D}$  an equilibrium of (3.96) for  $t = t_0$ , if for all times  $t \ge t_0 \ge 0$  the relationship

$$\mathbf{f}(t, \mathbf{x}_R) = \mathbf{0} \tag{3.97}$$

is satisfied, where  $\mathbf{x}_R$  must be independent of time t. Without loss of generality, one can assume that an equilibrium with  $\mathbf{x}_R = \mathbf{0}$  for  $t_0 = 0$  is given.

*Exercise* 3.20. Show that for  $\mathbf{x}_R \neq \mathbf{0}$ ,  $t_0 \neq 0$ , one can always achieve, through a simple coordinate and time transformation, that in the new coordinates the equilibrium  $\tilde{\mathbf{x}}_R = \mathbf{0}$  for  $\tilde{t} = 0$ .

In the following, it will be briefly shown that the equilibrium of a non-autonomous system (3.96) can also be the transformed nontrivial solution of an autonomous system. This has the advantage that the stability analysis of a solution trajectory can be reduced to the stability of an equilibrium of a non-autonomous system. Consider the autonomous system

$$\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}\tau}\mathbf{y} = \mathbf{g}(\mathbf{y}) \;, \tag{3.98}$$

Lecture Nonlinear Dynamical Systems and Control (SS 2025) ©A. Deutschmann-Olek and A. Kugi, Institut für Automatisierungs- und Regelungstechnik, TU Wien
where  $\bar{\mathbf{y}}(\tau)$  denotes a solution of (3.98) for  $\tau \geq \tau_0 \geq 0$ . Now, performing a coordinate and time transformation of the form  $\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{y} - \bar{\mathbf{y}}(\tau)$  and  $t = \tau - \tau_0$ , we obtain the transformed system

$$\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t}\mathbf{x} = \frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t}\mathbf{y}(t+\tau_0) - \frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t}\bar{\mathbf{y}}(t+\tau_0)$$

$$= \mathbf{g}(\mathbf{x} + \bar{\mathbf{y}}(t+\tau_0)) - \frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t}\bar{\mathbf{y}}(t+\tau_0)$$

$$:= \mathbf{f}(t,\mathbf{x}) .$$
(3.99)

Since  $\bar{\mathbf{y}}(\tau)$  is a solution of (3.98) for  $\tau \geq \tau_0 \geq 0$ , we have

$$\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}\tau}\bar{\mathbf{y}}(\tau) = \mathbf{g}(\bar{\mathbf{y}}(\tau)), \qquad \tau \ge \tau_0 \ge 0 \tag{3.100}$$

or in the transformed time t

$$\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t}\bar{\mathbf{y}}(t+\tau_0) = \mathbf{g}(\bar{\mathbf{y}}(t+\tau_0)), \qquad t \ge 0.$$
(3.101)

It is immediately clear from (3.99) and (3.101) that  $\mathbf{x}_R = \mathbf{0}$  for  $t_0 = 0$  is an equilibrium of the transformed system  $\frac{d}{dt}\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{f}(t, \mathbf{x})$ .

The definition of Lyapunov stability according to Definition 3.3 can now also be applied to non-autonomous systems, but here the dependence of the system behavior on the initial time  $t_0$  must be explicitly taken into account.

**Definition 3.11** (Lyapunov Stability of Non-Autonomous Systems). The equilibrium  $\mathbf{x}_R = \mathbf{0}$  of (3.96) is called

• stable (in the sense of Lyapunov), if for every  $\varepsilon > 0$  there exists a  $\delta(\varepsilon, t_0) > 0$  such that

$$\|\mathbf{x}(t_0)\| < \delta(\varepsilon, t_0) \quad \Rightarrow \quad \|\mathbf{x}(t)\| < \varepsilon \tag{3.102}$$

holds for all  $t \ge t_0 \ge 0$ ,

- uniformly stable, if for every  $\varepsilon > 0$  there exists a  $\delta(\varepsilon) > 0$  (independent of  $t_0$ ) such that (3.102) is satisfied for all  $t \ge t_0 \ge 0$ ,
- asymptotically stable, if it is stable and there exists a positive real number  $\eta(t_0)$  such that from

$$\|\mathbf{x}(t_0)\| < \eta(t_0) \quad \Rightarrow \quad \lim_{t \to \infty} \mathbf{x}(t) = \mathbf{0} , \qquad (3.103)$$

• uniformly asymptotically stable, if it is uniformly stable, there exists a positive real number  $\eta$  (independent of  $t_0$ ) such that (3.103) is satisfied for all  $t \ge t_0 \ge 0$ ,

and for every  $\mu > 0$  one can find a  $T(\mu) > 0$  such that

$$\|\mathbf{x}(t_0)\| < \eta \quad \Rightarrow \quad \|\mathbf{x}(t)\| < \mu \quad \text{for all} \quad t \ge t_0 + T(\mu)$$
(3.104)

holds.

For non-autonomous systems of the form (3.96), a theorem analogous to Theorem 3.1 can now be given for checking uniform stability:

**Theorem 3.9** (Uniform stability of non-autonomous systems). Let  $\mathbf{x}_R = \mathbf{0}$  be an equilibrium of (3.96) for t = 0 and  $\mathcal{D} \subseteq \mathbb{R}^n$  be an open neighborhood of  $\mathbf{0}$ . If there exists a continuously differentiable function  $V(t, \mathbf{x}) : [0, \infty) \times \mathcal{D} \to \mathbb{R}$  and continuous positive definite functions  $W_1(\mathbf{x})$  and  $W_2(\mathbf{x})$  on  $\mathcal{D}$  such that

$$W_1(\mathbf{x}) \le V(t, \mathbf{x}) \le W_2(\mathbf{x}) \tag{3.105a}$$

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial t}V + \left(\frac{\partial}{\partial \mathbf{x}}V\right)\mathbf{f}(t,\mathbf{x}) \le 0 \tag{3.105b}$$

holds for all  $t \ge 0$  and all  $\mathbf{x} \in \mathcal{D}$ , then the equilibrium  $\mathbf{x}_R = \mathbf{0}$  is uniformly stable. If furthermore a continuous positive definite function  $W_3(\mathbf{x})$  on  $\mathcal{D}$  exists such that (3.105b) can be bounded as

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial t}V + \left(\frac{\partial}{\partial \mathbf{x}}V\right)\mathbf{f}(t,\mathbf{x}) \le -W_3(\mathbf{x}) < 0 \tag{3.106}$$

for all  $t \geq 0$  and all  $\mathbf{x} \in \mathcal{D}$ , then the equilibrium  $\mathbf{x}_R = \mathbf{0}$  is uniformly asymptotically stable.

The proof of this theorem can be found in the literature cited at the end.

*Exercise* 3.21. Show that the equilibrium  $\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{0}$  of the system

$$\begin{bmatrix} \dot{x}_1\\ \dot{x}_2 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} -x_1 - g(t)x_2\\ x_1 - x_2 \end{bmatrix}$$
(3.107)

with the continuously differentiable time function g(t),  $0 \le g(t) \le k$  and  $\frac{d}{dt}g(t) \le g(t)$  for all  $t \ge 0$  is uniformly asymptotically stable.

*Exercise* 3.22. Given is the following mathematical model (mathematical pendulum with time-varying damping)

$$\begin{bmatrix} \dot{x}_1\\ \dot{x}_2 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} x_2\\ -\sin(x_1) - g(t)x_2 \end{bmatrix}$$
(3.108)

with the continuously differentiable time function g(t),  $0 < \alpha \leq g(t) \leq \beta < \infty$  and  $\frac{d}{dt}g(t) \leq \gamma < 2$  for all  $t \geq 0$ . Show that the equilibrium  $x_1 = x_2 = 0$  is uniformly asymptotically stable.

Besides uniform stability, exponential stability also plays a crucial role in the analysis of non-autonomous systems.

Lecture Nonlinear Dynamical Systems and Control (SS 2025) ©A. Deutschmann-Olek and A. Kugi, Institut für Automatisierungs- und Regelungstechnik, TU Wien

**Definition 3.12** (Exponential Stability of Non-autonomous Systems). The equilibrium  $\mathbf{x}_R = \mathbf{0}$  of (3.96) is called *exponentially stable* if positive constants  $k_1$ ,  $k_2$ , and  $k_3$  exist such that

$$\|\mathbf{x}(t_0)\| < k_3 \quad \Rightarrow \quad \|\mathbf{x}(t)\| < k_1 \|\mathbf{x}(t_0)\| e^{-k_2(t-t_0)} .$$
 (3.109)

The verification of exponential stability can be done using the following theorem.

**Theorem 3.10** (Exponential Stability of Non-autonomous Systems). Let  $\mathbf{x}_R = \mathbf{0}$  be an equilibrium of (3.96) at t = 0 and  $\mathcal{D} \subseteq \mathbb{R}^n$  be an open neighborhood of  $\mathbf{0}$ . If there exists a continuously differentiable function  $V(t, \mathbf{x}) : [0, \infty) \times \mathcal{D} \to \mathbb{R}$  and positive constants  $\alpha_j$ ,  $j = 1, \ldots, 4$ , such that

$$\alpha_1 \|\mathbf{x}(t)\|^{\alpha_4} \le V(t, \mathbf{x}) \le \alpha_2 \|\mathbf{x}(t)\|^{\alpha_4}$$
(3.110a)

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial t}V + \left(\frac{\partial}{\partial \mathbf{x}}V\right)\mathbf{f}(t,\mathbf{x}) \le -\alpha_3 \|\mathbf{x}(t)\|^{\alpha_4} \tag{3.110b}$$

holds for all  $t \geq 0$  and all  $\mathbf{x} \in \mathcal{D}$ , then the equilibrium  $\mathbf{x}_R = \mathbf{0}$  is exponentially stable.

*Proof.* From the two inequalities (3.110), it can be seen that

$$\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t}V(t,\mathbf{x}) \le -\alpha_3 \|\mathbf{x}(t)\|^{\alpha_4} \le -\frac{\alpha_3}{\alpha_2}V(t,\mathbf{x})$$
(3.111)

and thus

$$V(t, \mathbf{x}) \le V(t_0, \mathbf{x}(t_0)) e^{-\frac{\alpha_3}{\alpha_2}(t-t_0)}$$
 (3.112)

Furthermore, from (3.110a) it follows

$$V(t_0, \mathbf{x}(t_0)) \le \alpha_2 \|\mathbf{x}(t_0)\|^{\alpha_4}$$
(3.113)

and

$$\|\mathbf{x}(t)\| \le \left(\frac{V(t,\mathbf{x})}{\alpha_1}\right)^{\frac{1}{\alpha_4}}, \qquad (3.114)$$

hence, with (3.112), the following estimation

$$\|\mathbf{x}(t)\| \le \left(\frac{V(t,\mathbf{x})}{\alpha_1}\right)^{\frac{1}{\alpha_4}} \le \left(\frac{\alpha_2}{\alpha_1}\right)^{\frac{1}{\alpha_4}} \|\mathbf{x}(t_0)\| \mathrm{e}^{-\frac{\alpha_3}{\alpha_2\alpha_4}(t-t_0)}$$
(3.115)

can be given. This directly shows the exponential stability according to Definition 3.12 for  $k_1 = \left(\frac{\alpha_2}{\alpha_1}\right)^{\frac{1}{\alpha_4}}$  and  $k_2 = \frac{\alpha_3}{\alpha_2 \alpha_4}$ .

*Exercise* 3.23. Given is the following mathematical model

$$\begin{bmatrix} \dot{x}_1 \\ \dot{x}_2 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} h(t)x_2 - g(t)x_1^3 \\ -h(t)x_1 - g(t)x_2^3 \end{bmatrix}$$
(3.116)

with the continuously differentiable and bounded time functions h(t) and  $g(t), g(t) \ge 1$ k > 0 for all  $t \ge 0$ . Is the equilibrium  $x_1 = x_2 = 0$  uniformly asymptotically stable? Is the equilibrium  $x_1 = x_2 = 0$  exponentially stable?

*Exercise* 3.24. Given is the following mathematical model

$$\begin{bmatrix} \dot{x}_1 \\ \dot{x}_2 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} -x_1 + x_2 + (x_1^2 + x_2^2)\sin(t) \\ -x_1 - x_2 + (x_1^2 + x_2^2)\cos(t) \end{bmatrix}.$$
 (3.117)

Show that the equilibrium  $x_1 = x_2 = 0$  is exponentially stable.

#### 3.2.1 Linear Systems

The stability analysis of linear time-varying systems of the form

$$\dot{\mathbf{x}} = \mathbf{A}(t)\mathbf{x} \tag{3.118}$$

is significantly more challenging compared to the time-invariant case as in (3.59).

*Example 3.1.* Consider the system (3.118) with the dynamics matrix

$$\mathbf{A}(t) = \begin{bmatrix} -1 + 1.5(\cos(t))^2 & 1 - 1.5\sin(t)\cos(t) \\ -1 - 1.5\sin(t)\cos(t) & -1 + 1.5(\sin(t))^2 \end{bmatrix}.$$
 (3.119)

In this case, the eigenvalues  $\lambda_{1,2} = -1/4 \pm I\sqrt{7}/4$  of  $\mathbf{A}(t)$  are constant for all times t and have negative real parts, yet the equilibrium is unstable as shown by the calculation of the solution for  $t_0 = 0$ 

$$\mathbf{x}(t) = \begin{bmatrix} \mathrm{e}^{t/2} \cos(t) & \mathrm{e}^{-t} \sin(t) \\ -\mathrm{e}^{t/2} \sin(t) & \mathrm{e}^{-t} \cos(t) \end{bmatrix} \mathbf{x}(0)$$
(3.120)

It is worth mentioning that linear time-varying systems arise naturally when linearizing nonlinear (autonomous) systems around a desired trajectory.

The stability analysis of the equilibrium can be carried out, for example, using Theorem 3.9. To do this, one chooses a suitable Lyapunov function of the form

$$V(t, \mathbf{x}) = \mathbf{x}^{\mathrm{T}} \mathbf{P}(t) \mathbf{x}, \qquad 0 < \alpha_1 \mathbf{I} \le \mathbf{P}(t) \le \alpha_2 \mathbf{I}$$
(3.121)

with a continuously differentiable, bounded, and symmetric matrix  $\mathbf{P}(t)$  and positive constants  $\alpha_1$  and  $\alpha_2$ . The Lyapunov function satisfies the inequalities

$$\alpha_1 \|\mathbf{x}\|_2^2 \le V(t, \mathbf{x}) \le \alpha_2 \|\mathbf{x}\|_2^2 .$$
(3.122)

Lecture Nonlinear Dynamical Systems and Control (SS 2025) ©A. Deutschmann-Olek and A. Kugi, Institut für Automatisierungs- und Regelungstechnik, TU Wien

If  $\mathbf{P}(t)$  satisfies the matrix differential equation

$$-\dot{\mathbf{P}}(t) = \mathbf{A}^{\mathrm{T}}(t)\mathbf{P}(t) + \mathbf{P}(t)\mathbf{A}(t) + \mathbf{Q}(t)$$
(3.123)

for a continuous, bounded, and symmetric matrix  $\mathbf{Q}(t)$  such that

$$0 < \alpha_3 \mathbf{I} \le \mathbf{Q}(t) , \qquad (3.124)$$

then the change in  $V(t, \mathbf{x})$  along a solution curve of (3.118) is given by

$$\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t}V(t,\mathbf{x}) = \dot{\mathbf{x}}^{\mathrm{T}}\mathbf{P}(t)\mathbf{x} + \mathbf{x}^{\mathrm{T}}\dot{\mathbf{P}}(t)\mathbf{x} + \mathbf{x}^{\mathrm{T}}\mathbf{P}(t)\dot{\mathbf{x}}$$

$$= \mathbf{x}^{\mathrm{T}}\left(\mathbf{A}^{\mathrm{T}}(t)\mathbf{P}(t) + \dot{\mathbf{P}}(t) + \mathbf{P}(t)\mathbf{A}(t)\right)\mathbf{x}$$

$$= -\mathbf{x}^{\mathrm{T}}\mathbf{Q}(t)\mathbf{x}$$

$$\leq -\alpha_{3}\|\mathbf{x}\|_{2}^{2} < 0.$$
(3.125)

From (3.122) and (3.125), it is immediately apparent that exponential stability for  $\alpha_4 = 2$  is also demonstrated by Theorem 3.10. It is worth mentioning that for linear time-varying systems, uniform asymptotic stability and exponential stability are equivalent.

For the analysis of linear *periodically* time-varying systems of the form (3.118) with  $\mathbf{A}(t) = \mathbf{A}(t+T)$ , a comprehensive theory can be found in the literature under the term *Floquet theory*. Here, we refrain from further elaboration on this topic, but we provide a useful estimation for the trajectories of linear time-varying systems.

**Theorem 3.11** (Ważewski's Inequality). A solution  $\mathbf{x}(t)$  of the linear time-varying system (3.118) with the real-valued dynamics matrix  $\mathbf{A}(t)$  satisfies the following inequality

$$\|\mathbf{x}(t_0)\|_2 \exp\left(\int_{t_0}^t \lambda(\tau) \,\mathrm{d}\tau\right) \le \|\mathbf{x}(t)\|_2 \le \|\mathbf{x}(t_0)\|_2 \exp\left(\int_{t_0}^t \Lambda(\tau) \,\mathrm{d}\tau\right) \,, \qquad (3.126)$$

where  $\lambda(t)$  and  $\Lambda(t)$  denote the smallest and largest eigenvalue of the symmetric part of the matrix  $\mathbf{A}(t)$ 

$$\mathbf{A}_{s}(t) = \frac{1}{2} \left( \mathbf{A}(t) + \mathbf{A}^{\mathrm{T}}(t) \right)$$
(3.127)

$$\lambda(t) \|\mathbf{x}(t)\|_2^2 \le \mathbf{x}^{\mathrm{T}}(t) \mathbf{A}_s(t) \mathbf{x}(t) \le \Lambda(t) \|\mathbf{x}(t)\|_2^2$$
(3.128)

and by substituting

$$\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t} \|\mathbf{x}(t)\|_{2}^{2} = \dot{\mathbf{x}}^{\mathrm{T}}(t)\mathbf{x}(t) + \mathbf{x}^{\mathrm{T}}(t)\dot{\mathbf{x}}(t) 
= \mathbf{x}^{\mathrm{T}}(t) (\mathbf{A}(t) + \mathbf{A}^{\mathrm{T}}(t))\mathbf{x}(t) 
= 2\mathbf{x}^{\mathrm{T}}(t)\mathbf{A}_{s}(t)\mathbf{x}(t)$$
(3.129)

we obtain

$$2\lambda(t) \|\mathbf{x}(t)\|_{2}^{2} \leq \frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t} \|\mathbf{x}(t)\|_{2}^{2} \leq 2\Lambda(t) \|\mathbf{x}(t)\|_{2}^{2} .$$
(3.130)

Now, considering only the left part of the inequality (3.130) in the first step, the result immediately follows according to (3.126)

$$2\lambda(t) \|\mathbf{x}(t)\|_{2}^{2} \leq 2\|\mathbf{x}(t)\|_{2} \frac{\mathrm{d}(\|\mathbf{x}(t)\|_{2})}{\mathrm{d}t}$$
(3.131a)

$$\lambda(t) dt \le \frac{d(\|\mathbf{x}(t)\|_2)}{\|\mathbf{x}(t)\|_2}$$
 (3.131b)

$$\int_{t_0}^t \lambda(\tau) \,\mathrm{d}\tau \le \ln\left(\frac{\|\mathbf{x}(t)\|_2}{\|\mathbf{x}(t_0)\|_2}\right) \tag{3.131c}$$

$$\|\mathbf{x}(t_0)\|_2 \exp\left(\int_{t_0}^t \lambda(\tau) \,\mathrm{d}\tau\right) \le \|\mathbf{x}(t)\|_2$$
 (3.131d)

*Exercise* 3.25. Show in the same way the right part of the inequality (3.130).

-1

Taking again the system (3.118) with the dynamics matrix (3.119) as an example, the symmetric part of the dynamics matrix is calculated as

$$\mathbf{A}_{s}(t) = \frac{1}{2} \Big( \mathbf{A}(t) + \mathbf{A}^{\mathrm{T}}(t) \Big) \\ = \begin{bmatrix} -1 + 1.5(\cos(t))^{2} & -1.5\sin(t)\cos(t) \\ -1.5\sin(t)\cos(t) & -1 + 1.5(\sin(t))^{2} \end{bmatrix}$$
(3.132)

with the corresponding eigenvalues  $\lambda_{s1} = 1/2$  and  $\lambda_{s2} = -1$ . According to Theorem 3.11, a solution  $\mathbf{x}(t)$  satisfies the inequality

$$\|\mathbf{x}(t_0)\|_2 e^{-(t-t_0)} \le \|\mathbf{x}(t)\|_2 \le \|\mathbf{x}(t_0)\|_2 e^{\frac{1}{2}(t-t_0)} .$$
(3.133)

Lecture Nonlinear Dynamical Systems and Control (SS 2025) ©A. Deutschmann-Olek and A. Kugi, Institut für Automatisierungs- und Regelungstechnik, TU Wien

#### 3.2.2 Lyapunov-like Theory: Barbalat's Lemma

In addition to the Lyapunov theory for non-autonomous nonlinear systems of the form (3.96) discussed in the previous section, one often finds a Lyapunov-like approach using what is called *Barbalat's Lemma*. It is based on the mathematical properties of the asymptotic behavior of functions and their derivatives. In the first step, let us review some asymptotic properties of functions and their temporal derivatives. For a function f(t) differentiable with respect to time t, the following holds:

(1) From  $\lim_{t\to\infty} \dot{f}(t) = 0$ , it does not follow  $\lim_{t\to\infty} f(t) = c$  with  $|c| < \infty$ .

As an example, consider the function  $f(t) = \ln(t)$ . While the derivative satisfies

$$\lim_{t \to \infty} \dot{f}(t) = \frac{1}{t} = 0 , \qquad (3.134)$$

the function itself goes to  $\infty$  as  $t \to \infty$ .

(2) From  $\lim_{t\to\infty} f(t) = c$  with  $|c| < \infty$ , it does not follow  $\lim_{t\to\infty} \dot{f}(t) = 0$ .

For example, consider the function  $f(t) = e^{-t} \sin(e^{2t})$ , for which  $\lim_{t \to \infty} f(t) = 0$ , but

$$\lim_{t \to \infty} \dot{f}(t) = \lim_{t \to \infty} \left( 2\cos\left(e^{2t}\right)e^t - e^{-t}\sin\left(e^{2t}\right) \right)$$
(3.135)

is not defined.

(3) If f(t) is bounded from below and not increasing  $(\dot{f}(t) \le 0)$ , then *it follows*  $\lim_{t \to \infty} f(t) = c$  with  $|c| < \infty$ .

Barbalat's Lemma now clarifies under which conditions the derivative  $\dot{f}(t)$  of a bounded function converges to zero as  $t \to \infty$ .

**Theorem 3.12** (Barbalat's Lemma). If the differentiable function f(t) satisfies  $\lim_{t\to\infty} f(t) = c$  with  $|c| < \infty$  and  $\dot{f}(t)$  is uniformly continuous, then  $\lim_{t\to\infty} \dot{f}(t) = 0$ .

Before showing how this theorem is used for stability analysis, let us briefly revisit the concept of *uniform continuity* of a function f(t).

**Definition 3.13** ( $\epsilon\delta$ -Continuity). A function f(t) is said to be *continuous* at the point  $t_1$  if for every  $\epsilon > 0$  there exists  $\delta = \delta(\epsilon, t_1) > 0$  such that

$$|t - t_1| < \delta \quad \Rightarrow \quad |f(t) - f(t_1)| < \epsilon . \tag{3.136}$$

A function f(t) is called *uniformly continuous* if  $\delta$  can always be found independently of  $t_1$ .

Consider the function  $f(t)=t^2$  as an example. Let us choose an  $\epsilon>0$  and determine a  $\delta$  such that

$$\left|t^{2}-t_{1}^{2}\right| < \epsilon \quad \text{or} \quad |t-t_{1}||t+t_{1}| < \epsilon, \qquad |t-t_{1}| < \delta.$$
 (3.137)

From (3.137), it can be seen that for  $t > t_1 > 0$ , for every  $\epsilon$ , a  $\delta$  can always be found such that

$$0 < t - t_1 < \delta \quad \Rightarrow \quad (t - t_1)(t + t_1) < \epsilon . \tag{3.138}$$

Replacing t in (3.138) with  $t_n = t_1 + \delta - \frac{\delta}{n}$  and letting  $n \to \infty$ , we obtain

$$\delta(2t_1 + \delta) < \epsilon \tag{3.139}$$

or rather

$$\delta < \frac{\epsilon}{2t_1} . \tag{3.140}$$

It can be observed that as  $t_1$  increases, keeping  $\epsilon$  constant, the value of  $\delta$  decreases, and thus there is no smallest  $\delta$  that would be correct for all  $t_1$ . Therefore, the function  $f(t) = t^2$  is continuous but not uniformly continuous. In contrast, for the function  $f(t) = \sqrt{t}$  under the condition  $t > t_1 > 0$ ,

$$\left|\sqrt{t} - \sqrt{t_1}\right| < \sqrt{|t - t_1|} < \epsilon , \qquad (3.141)$$

and choosing  $\delta = \epsilon^2$  immediately leads to uniform continuity, i.e.,

$$|t - t_1| < \delta$$
, (3.142a)

$$\sqrt{|t - t_1|} < \epsilon , \qquad (3.142b)$$

$$\left|\sqrt{t} - \sqrt{t_1}\right| < \epsilon . \tag{3.142c}$$

*Exercise* 3.26. Prove the last implication in (3.142).

As can be seen, verifying uniform continuity in this manner is quite tedious. Therefore, a *sufficient criterion* of the following form is often used:

Lecture Nonlinear Dynamical Systems and Control (SS 2025) ©A. Deutschmann-Olek and A. Kugi, Institut für Automatisierungs- und Regelungstechnik, TU Wien

**Theorem 3.13** (Sufficient condition for uniform continuity). A differentiable function f(t) is uniformly continuous if its derivative  $\frac{d}{dt}f(t)$  is bounded.

From Barbalat's Lemma, the following theorem for stability analysis of nonlinear, non-autonomous systems of the form (3.96) immediately follows.

**Theorem 3.14** (Lyapunov-like method). If a scalar function  $V(t, \mathbf{x}) : \mathbb{R}_+ \times \mathbb{R}^n \to \mathbb{R}$ satisfies the conditions

- (1)  $V(t, \mathbf{x})$  is bounded from below,
- (2)  $\dot{V}(t, \mathbf{x}) \leq 0$ , and
- (3)  $\dot{V}(t, \mathbf{x})$  is uniformly continuous in time t,
- then  $\lim_{t\to\infty} \dot{V}(t,\mathbf{x}) = 0.$

As an application example, consider the following control engineering problem: We want to position a mass m sliding on a horizontal surface using the force F in the absence of friction. The corresponding system of differential equations is

$$m\frac{\mathrm{d}^2}{\mathrm{d}t^2}x = F \ . \tag{3.143}$$

Suppose the desired position  $r_d(t)$  is specified by a person using a control stick, then a simple way to convert this external signal into a twice continuously differentiable reference signal  $x_d(t)$  is through a reference model of the form

$$\ddot{x}_{\rm d} + a_1 \dot{x}_{\rm d} + a_0 x_{\rm d} = a_0 r_{\rm d}, \qquad G(s) = \frac{\hat{x}_{\rm d}}{\hat{r}_{\rm d}} = \frac{a_0}{s^2 + a_1 s + a_0}$$
(3.144)

for suitable parameters  $a_1$  and  $a_0$ . The parameters  $a_1$  and  $a_0$  are chosen such that the reference model with transfer function G(s) is stable and meets the performance requirements. Now, the simple control law

$$F(t) = m \left( \ddot{x}_{\rm d} - 2\lambda \dot{e} - \lambda^2 e \right), \qquad e = x - x_{\rm d} \tag{3.145}$$

for  $\lambda > 0$  leads to an asymptotically stable closed loop with error dynamics

$$\ddot{e} + 2\lambda \dot{e} + \lambda^2 e = 0. \qquad (3.146)$$

Furthermore, assume that the mass m is constant but not precisely known, i.e., only the estimated value  $\hat{m}$  is known. Substituting the estimated value  $\hat{m}$  for m in the control law (3.145), we obtain for the closed loop

$$m\ddot{x} = \hat{m} \Big( \ddot{x}_{soll} - 2\lambda \dot{e} - \lambda^2 e \Big) \tag{3.147}$$

or

$$m\ddot{x} - m\left(\ddot{x}_{soll} - 2\lambda\dot{e} - \lambda^2 e\right) = \hat{m}\left(\ddot{x}_{soll} - 2\lambda\dot{e} - \lambda^2 e\right) - m\left(\ddot{x}_{soll} - 2\lambda\dot{e} - \lambda^2 e\right) \quad (3.148)$$

Lecture Nonlinear Dynamical Systems and Control (SS 2025) ©A. Deutschmann-Olek and A. Kugi, Institut für Automatisierungs- und Regelungstechnik, TU Wien

and by introducing a generalized control error  $s = \dot{e} + \lambda e$ , we get

$$m\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t}s + m\lambda s = e_m \underbrace{\left(\ddot{x}_{soll} - 2\lambda\dot{e} - \lambda^2 e\right)}_{w(t)}$$
(3.149)

with the parameter error  $e_m = \hat{m} - m$ .

The adaptive control law

$$\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t}\hat{m} = -\gamma ws, \qquad \gamma > 0 \tag{3.150}$$

guarantees that the generalized control error converges asymptotically to zero. To prove this, one considers the function bounded from below

$$V(s, e_m) = \frac{1}{2} \left( ms^2 + \frac{1}{\gamma} e_m^2 \right)$$
(3.151)

and calculates its time derivative

$$\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t}V = ms\left(-\lambda s + \frac{1}{m}e_mw\right) + \frac{1}{\gamma}e_m(-\gamma ws)$$

$$= -\lambda ms^2 \le 0 . \qquad (3.152)$$

Since V is positive definite in s and  $e_m$  and  $\dot{V}$  is negative semidefinite, the functions s and  $e_m$  are bounded. Taking another time derivative of  $\dot{V}$ , one obtains

$$\ddot{V} = -2\lambda ms \left(-\lambda s + \frac{1}{m}e_m w\right), \qquad (3.153)$$

and this function is also bounded due to the bounded quantities s and  $e_m$  and the assumption of bounded reference signals  $r_d(t)$  (hence w(t) is also bounded). According to Theorem 3.13,  $\dot{V}$  is uniformly continuous, the Barbalat's Lemma (Theorem 3.14) can be applied, leading to

$$\lim_{t \to \infty} \dot{V} = -\lim_{t \to \infty} \lambda m s^2 = 0 \tag{3.154}$$

thus

$$\lim_{t \to \infty} s = 0 . \tag{3.155}$$

### 3.3 Literatur

- [3.1] B. P. Demidovich, Vorlesung zur Mathematischen Stabilitätstheorie. Moskau: Verlag der Moskau Universität, 1998.
- [3.2] O. Föllinger, Nichtlineare Regelung I + II. München: Oldenbourg, 1993.
- [3.3] H. K. Khalil, Nonlinear Systems (3rd Edition). New Jersey: Prentice Hall, 2002.
- [3.4] E. Slotine and W. Li, Applied Nonlinear Control. New Jersey: Prentice Hall, 1991.
- [3.5] M. Vidyasagar, Nonlinear Systems Analysis. New Jersey: Prentice Hall, 1993.

# 4 Lyapunov-based Controller Design

This chapter discusses some controller design methods based on Lyapunov's theory of stability. The basic idea of these methods is to find a *nonlinear state feedback*  $\mathbf{u} = \boldsymbol{\alpha}(\mathbf{x})$  for a system of the form

$$\dot{\mathbf{x}} = \mathbf{f}(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{u}) , \qquad \mathbf{f}(\mathbf{0}, \mathbf{0}) = \mathbf{0}$$

$$(4.1)$$

with the state  $\mathbf{x} \in \mathbb{R}^n$ , the control input  $\mathbf{u} \in \mathbb{R}^p$ , and  $\boldsymbol{\alpha}(\mathbf{0}) = \mathbf{0}$ , such that the equilibrium  $\mathbf{x}_R = \mathbf{0}$  of the closed loop system

$$\dot{\mathbf{x}} = \mathbf{f}(\mathbf{x}, \boldsymbol{\alpha}(\mathbf{x})) \tag{4.2}$$

becomes stable or asymptotically stable in the sense of Lyapunov.

### 4.1 Integrator Backstepping

As a starting point and motivation for this nonlinear controller design method, consider the following nonlinear system

$$\dot{x}_1 = \cos(x_1) - x_1^3 + x_2 \tag{4.3a}$$

$$\dot{x}_2 = u \tag{4.3b}$$

with state  $\mathbf{x}^{\mathrm{T}} = [x_1, x_2]$  and control input u. Now, a state feedback control  $u = u(x_1, x_2)$ should be designed such that for every initial state  $\mathbf{x}(0) = \mathbf{x}_0$ ,  $\lim_{t\to\infty} x_1(t) = 0$  and  $\lim_{t\to\infty} |x_2(t)| = c < \infty$ . From (4.3), it can be seen that for  $x_{1,R} = 0$ , the only equilibrium with  $\mathbf{x}_R^{\mathrm{T}} = [0, -1]$  is given. Considering the state  $x_2$  as a virtual control input for the system (4.3a), then the state feedback

$$x_2 = \alpha(x_1) = -\cos(x_1) - c_1 x_1 , \qquad c_1 > 0$$
(4.4)

would make the equilibrium  $x_{1,R} = 0$  of the subsystem (4.3a), (4.4) asymptotically stable. To show this, let's choose the Lyapunov function

$$V(x_1) = \frac{1}{2}x_1^2 > 0 , \qquad (4.5)$$

then the time derivative is calculated as

$$\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t}V(x_1) = x_1\left(-x_1^3 - c_1x_1\right)$$
  
=  $-x_1^4 - c_1x_1^2 < 0$ . (4.6)

Next, the deviation of the state  $x_2$  from the "ideal" form (4.4)

$$z = x_2 - \alpha(x_1) = x_2 + \cos(x_1) + c_1 x_1 \tag{4.7}$$

is introduced as a new state variable, resulting in the differential equation (4.3) in the new state  $[x_1, z]$ 

$$\dot{x}_1 = \cos(x_1) - x_1^3 + \underbrace{(z - \cos(x_1) - c_1 x_1)}_{x_2}$$

$$= -x_1^3 - c_1 x_1 + z$$
(4.8a)

$$\dot{z} = \dot{x}_2 - \frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t} \alpha(x_1)$$

$$= u - (\sin(x_1) - c_1) \left( -x_1^3 - c_1 x_1 + z \right) .$$
(4.8b)

Now, assuming a Lyapunov function in the form

$$V_a(x_1, x_2) = V(x_1) + \frac{1}{2}z^2 = \frac{1}{2}x_1^2 + \frac{1}{2}(x_2 + \cos(x_1) + c_1x_1)^2$$
(4.9)

we get

$$\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t}V_a(x_1, x_2) = x_1\left(-x_1^3 - c_1x_1 + z\right) + z\left(u - (\sin(x_1) - c_1)\left(-x_1^3 - c_1x_1 + z\right)\right)$$
  
=  $-c_1x_1^2 - x_1^4 + z\left\{\underbrace{x_1 + u - (\sin(x_1) - c_1)\left(-x_1^3 - c_1x_1 + z\right)\right\}}_{\chi}$ . (4.10)

The idea is now to determine the control input u in such a way that  $\frac{d}{dt}V_a(x_1, x_2)$  becomes negative definite. This can be achieved, for example, by choosing

$$\chi = x_1 + u - (\sin(x_1) - c_1) \left( -x_1^3 - c_1 x_1 + z \right) = -c_2 z, \qquad c_2 > 0 \tag{4.11}$$

or

$$u = -x_1 + (\sin(x_1) - c_1) \left( -x_1^3 - c_1 x_1 + z \right) - c_2 z .$$
(4.12)

In conclusion, it can be easily verified that the state feedback (4.12) globally asymptotically stabilizes the equilibrium  $x_{1,R} = z_R = 0$  or  $x_{1,R} = 0$  and  $x_{2,R} = -1$ .

*Exercise* 4.1. Show that  $V_a(x_1, x_2)$  from (4.9) is radially unbounded.

The choice of u according to (4.11) is of course not unique, as on one hand,  $\chi = -f(z)$  could be chosen with any arbitrary function f(z) satisfying f(z)z > 0 for all  $z \neq 0$ , and on the other hand, it is not necessary to cancel all terms of  $\chi$ . For example, the state feedback

$$u = -x_1 + (\sin(x_1) - c_1) \left( -x_1^3 - c_1 x_1 \right) - c_2 z \tag{4.13}$$

Lecture Nonlinear Dynamical Systems and Control (SS 2025) @A. Deutschmann-Olek and A. Kugi, Institut für Automatisierungs- und Regelungstechnik, TU Wien

$$\dot{x}_1 = -x_1^3 - c_1 x_1 + z \tag{4.14a}$$

$$\dot{z} = -x_1 - c_2 z - (\sin(x_1) - c_1)z$$
 (4.14b)

and for the choice of parameters  $c_2 > c_1 + 1$ , the Lyapunov function

$$V_a(x_1, z) = \frac{1}{2}x_1^2 + \frac{1}{2}z^2$$
(4.15)

and its time derivative

$$\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t}V_a = -x_1^4 - c_1x_1^2 - (c_2 - c_1 + \sin(x_1))z^2 \tag{4.16}$$

show the global asymptotic stability of the equilibrium  $x_{1,R} = z_R = 0$  or  $x_{1,R} = 0$  and  $x_{2,R} = -1$ .

*Exercise* 4.2. Show that for a suitable choice of parameters  $k_1$  and  $k_2$ , even the simple state feedback

$$u = -k_1 z - k_2 x_1^2 z \tag{4.17}$$

leads to a closed loop with a globally asymptotically stable equilibrium.

Tip: Choose the Lyapunov function as  $V_a = \frac{1}{2}x_1^2 + \frac{1}{2}z^2$  and combine the terms of  $\dot{V}_a$  appropriately.

These variations mentioned above demonstrate the design degrees of freedom of the method. The generalization of the example discussed above is now possible in the following form:

Theorem 4.1 (Integrator Backstepping). Consider the nonlinear system

$$\dot{\mathbf{x}}_1 = \mathbf{f}(\mathbf{x}_1) + \mathbf{g}(\mathbf{x}_1)x_2 \tag{4.18a}$$

$$\dot{x}_2 = u \tag{4.18b}$$

with the state  $\mathbf{x}^{\mathrm{T}} = [\mathbf{x}_{1}^{\mathrm{T}}, x_{2}] \in \mathbb{R}^{n+1}$ , the control input  $u \in \mathbb{R}$ , and  $\mathbf{x}_{0} = \mathbf{x}(0)$ . Assume that a continuously differentiable function  $\alpha(\mathbf{x}_{1})$  with  $\alpha(\mathbf{0}) = 0$  and a positive definite, radially unbounded function  $V(\mathbf{x}_{1})$  exist such that

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial \mathbf{x}_1} V\{\mathbf{f}(\mathbf{x}_1) + \mathbf{g}(\mathbf{x}_1)\alpha(\mathbf{x}_1)\} \le W(\mathbf{x}_1) \le 0$$
(4.19)

and  $\mathbf{f}(\mathbf{x}_1)$  satisfies  $\mathbf{f}(\mathbf{0}) = \mathbf{0}$ .

(1) If  $W(\mathbf{x}_1)$  is negative definite, then there exists a state feedback  $u = \alpha_a(\mathbf{x}_1, x_2)$ such that the equilibrium  $\mathbf{x}_{1,R} = 0$ ,  $x_{2,R} = 0$  of the closed loop system is globally

Lecture Nonlinear Dynamical Systems and Control (SS 2025) ©A. Deutschmann-Olek and A. Kugi, Institut für Automatisierungs- und Regelungstechnik, TU Wien

$$V_a(\mathbf{x}_1, x_2) = V(\mathbf{x}_1) + \frac{1}{2}(x_2 - \alpha(\mathbf{x}_1))^2 .$$
(4.20)

One possible state feedback is given by

$$u = -c(x_2 - \alpha(\mathbf{x}_1)) + \frac{\partial}{\partial \mathbf{x}_1} \alpha(\mathbf{x}_1) \{ \mathbf{f}(\mathbf{x}_1) + \mathbf{g}(\mathbf{x}_1) x_2 \} - \frac{\partial}{\partial \mathbf{x}_1} V(\mathbf{x}_1) \mathbf{g}(\mathbf{x}_1) , \quad c > 0 .$$

$$(4.21)$$

(2) If  $W(\mathbf{x}_1)$  is only negative semidefinite, then there exists a state feedback  $u = \alpha_a(\mathbf{x}_1, x_2)$  such that the state variables  $\mathbf{x}_1(t)$  and  $x_2(t)$  are bounded for all times  $t \ge 0$ , and the solution of the system converges for  $t \to \infty$  to the largest positive invariant set  $\mathcal{M}$  of the set

$$\mathcal{Y} = \left\{ \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{x}_1 \\ x_2 \end{bmatrix} \in \mathbb{R}^{n+1} \middle| W(\mathbf{x}_1) = 0 \quad und \quad x_2 = \alpha(\mathbf{x}_1) \right\}$$
(4.22)

*Proof.* Introducing the new state variables  $z = x_2 - \alpha(\mathbf{x}_1)$  transforms (4.18) to

$$\dot{\mathbf{x}}_1 = \mathbf{f}(\mathbf{x}_1) + \mathbf{g}(\mathbf{x}_1) \{ z + \alpha(\mathbf{x}_1) \}$$
(4.23a)

$$\dot{z} = u - \frac{\partial}{\partial \mathbf{x}_1} \alpha(\mathbf{x}_1) \{ \mathbf{f}(\mathbf{x}_1) + \mathbf{g}(\mathbf{x}_1) \{ z + \alpha(\mathbf{x}_1) \} \} .$$
(4.23b)

Substituting the state feedback (4.21) into (4.23), the time derivative of the positive definite, radially unbounded Lyapunov function  $V_a(\mathbf{x}_1, x_2)$  from (4.20) satisfies

$$\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t}V_{a} = \frac{\partial}{\partial\mathbf{x}_{1}}V(\mathbf{x}_{1})(\mathbf{f}(\mathbf{x}_{1}) + \mathbf{g}(\mathbf{x}_{1})\{z + \alpha(\mathbf{x}_{1})\}) + z\left\{-cz - \frac{\partial}{\partial\mathbf{x}_{1}}V(\mathbf{x}_{1})\mathbf{g}(\mathbf{x}_{1})\right\}$$

$$\leq W(\mathbf{x}_{1}) - cz^{2} .$$
(4.24)

For  $W(\mathbf{x}_1) < 0$ , the global asymptotic stability of the equilibrium  $\mathbf{x}_{1,R} = 0$ ,  $x_{2,R} = 0$  is thus proven. In the case when  $W(\mathbf{x}_1) \leq 0$ , according to the invariance principle of Krassovskii-LaSalle (see Theorem 3.4), it follows that

$$\lim_{t \to \infty} \mathbf{\Phi}_t(\mathbf{x}_0) \in \mathcal{M} \tag{4.25}$$

with  $\mathcal{M}$  being the largest positive invariant subset of set  $\mathcal{Y}$ 

$$\mathcal{Y} = \left\{ \mathbf{x} = \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{x}_1 \\ x_2 \end{bmatrix} \in \mathbb{R}^{n+1} \middle| \frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t} V_a = 0 \quad \text{bzw.} \quad W(\mathbf{x}_1) = 0 \quad \text{und} \quad x_2 = \alpha(\mathbf{x}_1) \right\},$$
(4.26)

which concludes the proof of the theorem above.

Lecture Nonlinear Dynamical Systems and Control (SS 2025) ©A. Deutschmann-Olek and A. Kugi, Institut für Automatisierungs- und Regelungstechnik, TU Wien

 $Exercise\ 4.3.$  Design a nonlinear state feedback using the Integrator Backstepping method for the system

$$\dot{x}_1 = x_1 x_2 \tag{4.27a}$$

$$\dot{x}_2 = u . \tag{4.27b}$$

Satz 4.1 can now be extended to systems with a chain of integrators of the form

$$\dot{\mathbf{x}}_1 = \mathbf{f}(\mathbf{x}_1) + \mathbf{g}(\mathbf{x}_1)x_2$$

$$\dot{x}_2 = x_3$$

$$\dot{x}_3 = x_4$$

$$\vdots$$

$$\dot{x}_k = u .$$
(4.28)

Assuming that a continuously differentiable function  $\alpha_1(\mathbf{x}_1)$  with  $\alpha_1(\mathbf{0}) = 0$  and a positive definite, radially unbounded function  $V(\mathbf{x}_1)$  exist such that condition (4.19) is satisfied, and  $\mathbf{f}(\mathbf{x}_1)$  satisfies the relationship  $\mathbf{f}(\mathbf{0}) = \mathbf{0}$ , the function

$$V_a(\mathbf{x}_1, x_2, \dots, x_k) = V(\mathbf{x}_1) + \frac{1}{2} \sum_{j=2}^k (x_j - \alpha_{j-1}(\mathbf{x}_1, x_2, \dots, x_{j-1}))^2$$
(4.29)

can be assumed as the Lyapunov function of the closed loop. To explain the procedure in more detail, consider the case k = 3. The mathematical model (4.28) then reads

$$\dot{\mathbf{x}}_1 = \mathbf{f}(\mathbf{x}_1) + \mathbf{g}(\mathbf{x}_1)x_2 \tag{4.30a}$$

$$\dot{x}_2 = x_3 \tag{4.30b}$$

$$\dot{x}_3 = u \tag{4.30c}$$

and the Lyapunov function (4.29) results in

$$V_a(\mathbf{x}_1, x_2, x_3) = V(\mathbf{x}_1) + \frac{1}{2}(x_2 - \alpha_1(\mathbf{x}_1))^2 + \frac{1}{2}(x_3 - \alpha_2(\mathbf{x}_1, x_2))^2 .$$
(4.31)

In a first step, introduce the state variables

$$z_1 = x_2 - \alpha_1(\mathbf{x}_1) \tag{4.32a}$$

$$z_2 = x_3 - \alpha_2(\mathbf{x}_1, x_2) \tag{4.32b}$$

and calculate the time derivative of the Lyapunov function (4.31) along a solution of the system

$$\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t}V_{a} = \frac{\partial V(\mathbf{x}_{1})}{\partial \mathbf{x}_{1}}(\mathbf{f}(\mathbf{x}_{1}) + \mathbf{g}(\mathbf{x}_{1})\{z_{1} + \alpha_{1}(\mathbf{x}_{1})\}) 
+ z_{1}\left(x_{3} - \frac{\partial \alpha_{1}(\mathbf{x}_{1})}{\partial \mathbf{x}_{1}}(\mathbf{f}(\mathbf{x}_{1}) + \mathbf{g}(\mathbf{x}_{1})x_{2})\right) 
+ z_{2}\left(u - \frac{\partial}{\partial \mathbf{x}_{1}}\alpha_{2}(\mathbf{x}_{1}, x_{2})\{\mathbf{f}(\mathbf{x}_{1}) + \mathbf{g}(\mathbf{x}_{1})x_{2}\} - \frac{\partial}{\partial x_{2}}\alpha_{2}(\mathbf{x}_{1}, x_{2})x_{3}\right).$$
(4.33)

Next, considering  $x_3$  in the first row of (4.33) as the input and applying Theorem 4.1 for it, we obtain

$$x_{3} = \alpha_{2}(\mathbf{x}_{1}, x_{2})$$
  
=  $-c_{1}z_{1} + \frac{\partial}{\partial \mathbf{x}_{1}}\alpha_{1}(\mathbf{x}_{1})(\mathbf{f}(\mathbf{x}_{1}) + \mathbf{g}(\mathbf{x}_{1})x_{2}) - \frac{\partial}{\partial \mathbf{x}_{1}}V(\mathbf{x}_{1})\mathbf{g}(\mathbf{x}_{1})$  (4.34)

with  $c_1 > 0$ . By replacing  $x_3 = z_2 + \alpha_2(\mathbf{x}_1, x_2)$  according to (4.32) in (4.33), we get

$$\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t}V_{a} = \underbrace{\frac{\partial}{\partial\mathbf{x}_{1}}V(\mathbf{x}_{1})(\mathbf{f}(\mathbf{x}_{1}) + \mathbf{g}(\mathbf{x}_{1})\alpha_{1}(\mathbf{x}_{1}))}_{\leq W(\mathbf{x}_{1})} - c_{1}z_{1}^{2} + z_{1}z_{2}}_{\leq W(\mathbf{x}_{1})} + z_{2}\left(u - \frac{\partial}{\partial\mathbf{x}_{1}}\alpha_{2}(\mathbf{x}_{1}, x_{2})\{\mathbf{f}(\mathbf{x}_{1}) + \mathbf{g}(\mathbf{x}_{1})x_{2}\} - \frac{\partial}{\partial x_{2}}\alpha_{2}(\mathbf{x}_{1}, x_{2})x_{3}\right).$$
(4.35)

Applying Theorem 4.1 again to (4.35) with the input u ultimately leads to the state feedback

$$u = -z_1 - c_2 z_2 + \frac{\partial}{\partial \mathbf{x}_1} \alpha_2(\mathbf{x}_1, x_2) (\mathbf{f}(\mathbf{x}_1) + \mathbf{g}(\mathbf{x}_1) x_2) + \frac{\partial}{\partial x_2} \alpha_2(\mathbf{x}_1, x_2) x_3$$
(4.36)

with  $c_2 > 0$  and  $\alpha_2(\mathbf{x}_1, x_2)$  according to (4.34).

*Exercise* 4.4. Prove that for a negatively definite  $W(\mathbf{x}_1)$ , the equilibrium  $\mathbf{x}_1 = \mathbf{0}$ ,  $x_2 = x_3 = 0$  is globally asymptotically stable. To which set do the solutions of the system converge if  $W(\mathbf{x}_1)$  is only negatively semidefinite?

#### 4.2 Generalized Backstepping

The method of Integrator Backstepping can now be extended to a class of nonlinear systems of the form

$$\dot{\mathbf{x}}_1 = \mathbf{f}_1(\mathbf{x}_1, \mathbf{x}_2) \tag{4.37a}$$

$$\dot{\mathbf{x}}_2 = \mathbf{f}_2(\mathbf{x}_1, \mathbf{x}_2) + \mathbf{u} \tag{4.37b}$$

with the state  $\mathbf{x}_1 \in \mathbb{R}^n$ ,  $\mathbf{x}_2 \in \mathbb{R}^p$  and the control input  $\mathbf{u} \in \mathbb{R}^p$ . Without loss of generality, assume that  $\mathbf{x}_{1,R} = \mathbf{0}$ ,  $\mathbf{x}_{2,R} = \mathbf{0}$  is an equilibrium of the free system, i.e., for  $\mathbf{u} = \mathbf{0}$ . If this is not the case, then a state transformation  $\tilde{\mathbf{x}}_1 = \mathbf{x}_1 - \mathbf{x}_{1,R}$  and  $\tilde{\mathbf{x}}_2 = \mathbf{x}_2 - \mathbf{x}_{2,R}$  and a control input transformation  $\tilde{\mathbf{u}} = \mathbf{u} - \mathbf{u}_R$  can always be found such that this holds in the new variables.

**Theorem 4.2.** Assume there exists a Lyapunov function  $V(\mathbf{x}_1)$  and a state feedback  $\mathbf{x}_2 = \boldsymbol{\alpha}(\mathbf{x}_1)$  with  $\boldsymbol{\alpha}(\mathbf{0}) = \mathbf{0}$  such that the equilibrium  $\mathbf{x}_{1,R} = \mathbf{0}$  of the system

$$\dot{\mathbf{x}}_1 = \mathbf{f}_1(\mathbf{x}_1, \boldsymbol{\alpha}(\mathbf{x}_1)) \tag{4.38}$$

is globally (locally) asymptotically stable. Then, a state feedback  $\mathbf{u} = \mathbf{u}(\mathbf{x}_1, \mathbf{x}_2)$  with  $\mathbf{u}(\mathbf{0}, \mathbf{0}) = \mathbf{0}$  can always be specified such that the equilibrium  $\mathbf{x}_{1,R} = \mathbf{0}$ ,  $\mathbf{x}_{2,R} = \mathbf{0}$  of the closed loop system (4.37) is globally (locally) asymptotically stable.

Lecture Nonlinear Dynamical Systems and Control (SS 2025) ©A. Deutschmann-Olek and A. Kugi, Institut für Automatisierungs- und Regelungstechnik, TU Wien

*Proof.* The following proof is constructive and thus provides a computational procedure to obtain the state feedback law.

(1) For the Lyapunov function  $V(\mathbf{x}_1)$ , due to the asymptotic stability of system (4.38), we have

$$\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t}V(\mathbf{x}_1) = \frac{\partial}{\partial \mathbf{x}_1}V(\mathbf{x}_1)\mathbf{f}_1(\mathbf{x}_1, \boldsymbol{\alpha}(\mathbf{x}_1)) < 0.$$
(4.39)

(2) Now, introduce an auxiliary quantity  $\mathbf{G}(\mathbf{x}_1, \mathbf{x}_2)$  in the form

$$\mathbf{G}(\mathbf{x}_1, \mathbf{x}_2) = \int_0^1 \frac{\partial}{\partial \mathbf{v}} \mathbf{f}_1(\mathbf{x}_1, \mathbf{v}) \bigg|_{\mathbf{v} = \boldsymbol{\alpha}(\mathbf{x}_1) + \lambda \mathbf{x}_2} \, \mathrm{d}\lambda \tag{4.40}$$

such that  $\mathbf{f}_1(\mathbf{x}_1, \boldsymbol{\alpha}(\mathbf{x}_1) + \mathbf{x}_2)$  can be expressed as follows

$$\mathbf{f}_1(\mathbf{x}_1, \boldsymbol{\alpha}(\mathbf{x}_1) + \mathbf{x}_2) = \mathbf{f}_1(\mathbf{x}_1, \boldsymbol{\alpha}(\mathbf{x}_1)) + \mathbf{G}(\mathbf{x}_1, \mathbf{x}_2)\mathbf{x}_2$$
(4.41)

To show this, multiply (4.40) from the right by  $\mathbf{x}_2$  and replace the integrand with the left-hand side of the subsequent expression

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial\lambda}\mathbf{f}_{1}\left(\mathbf{x}_{1},\underbrace{\boldsymbol{\alpha}(\mathbf{x}_{1})+\lambda\mathbf{x}_{2}}_{\mathbf{v}}\right) = \begin{bmatrix} \frac{\partial f_{1,1}(\mathbf{x}_{1},\mathbf{v})}{\partial v_{1}}x_{2,1}+\dots+\frac{\partial f_{1,1}(\mathbf{x}_{1},\mathbf{v})}{\partial v_{p}}x_{2,p} \\ \vdots \\ \frac{\partial f_{1,n}(\mathbf{x}_{1},\mathbf{v})}{\partial v_{1}}x_{2,1}+\dots+\frac{\partial f_{1,n}(\mathbf{x}_{1},\mathbf{v})}{\partial v_{p}}x_{2,p} \end{bmatrix} \quad (4.42)$$

$$= \frac{\partial}{\partial\mathbf{v}}\mathbf{f}_{1}(\mathbf{x}_{1},\mathbf{v})\Big|_{\mathbf{v}=\boldsymbol{\alpha}(\mathbf{x}_{1})+\lambda\mathbf{x}_{2}}$$

which yields

$$\mathbf{G}(\mathbf{x}_{1}, \mathbf{x}_{2})\mathbf{x}_{2} = \int_{0}^{1} \frac{\partial}{\partial \mathbf{v}} \mathbf{f}_{1}(\mathbf{x}_{1}, \mathbf{v}) \Big|_{\mathbf{v} = \boldsymbol{\alpha}(\mathbf{x}_{1}) + \lambda \mathbf{x}_{2}} \mathbf{x}_{2} \, \mathrm{d}\lambda$$

$$= \int_{0}^{1} \frac{\partial}{\partial \lambda} \mathbf{f}_{1}(\mathbf{x}_{1}, \boldsymbol{\alpha}(\mathbf{x}_{1}) + \lambda \mathbf{x}_{2}) \, \mathrm{d}\lambda$$
(4.43)

and consequently (4.41)

$$\mathbf{G}(\mathbf{x}_1, \mathbf{x}_2)\mathbf{x}_2 = \mathbf{f}_1(\mathbf{x}_1, \boldsymbol{\alpha}(\mathbf{x}_1) + \mathbf{x}_2) - \mathbf{f}_1(\mathbf{x}_1, \boldsymbol{\alpha}(\mathbf{x}_1)) .$$
(4.44)

(3) The state feedback law

$$\mathbf{u}(\mathbf{x}_{1}, \mathbf{x}_{2}) = -\mathbf{f}_{2}(\mathbf{x}_{1}, \mathbf{x}_{2}) + \frac{\partial \boldsymbol{\alpha}(\mathbf{x}_{1})}{\partial \mathbf{x}_{1}} \mathbf{f}_{1}(\mathbf{x}_{1}, \mathbf{x}_{2}) - \left[\frac{\partial V(\mathbf{x}_{1})}{\partial \mathbf{x}_{1}} \mathbf{G}(\mathbf{x}_{1}, \mathbf{x}_{2} - \boldsymbol{\alpha}(\mathbf{x}_{1}))\right]^{\mathrm{T}} - c(\mathbf{x}_{2} - \boldsymbol{\alpha}(\mathbf{x}_{1})), \quad c > 0$$

$$(4.45)$$

guarantees the asymptotic stability of the equilibrium of the closed loop system. The candidate for the Lyapunov function of the closed loop system is the positive definite function

$$V_{a}(\mathbf{x}_{1}, \mathbf{x}_{2}) = V(\mathbf{x}_{1}) + \frac{1}{2} \|\mathbf{x}_{2} - \boldsymbol{\alpha}(\mathbf{x}_{1})\|_{2}^{2}$$
(4.46)

The time derivative of  $V_a$  along a solution of the system is

$$\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t} V_a(\mathbf{x}_1, \mathbf{x}_2) = \begin{bmatrix} \frac{\partial V_a}{\partial \mathbf{x}_1} & \frac{\partial V_a}{\partial \mathbf{x}_2} \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{f}_1(\mathbf{x}_1, \mathbf{x}_2) \\ \mathbf{f}_2(\mathbf{x}_1, \mathbf{x}_2) + \mathbf{u} \end{bmatrix}$$
(4.47)

Substituting  $\mathbf{u}(\mathbf{x}_1, \mathbf{x}_2)$  and  $V_a(\mathbf{x}_1, \mathbf{x}_2)$  from (4.45) and (4.46) into the equations, we obtain

$$\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t}V_{a} = \frac{\partial V}{\partial \mathbf{x}_{1}}\mathbf{f}_{1}(\mathbf{x}_{1},\mathbf{x}_{2}) + (\mathbf{x}_{2} - \boldsymbol{\alpha}(\mathbf{x}_{1}))^{\mathrm{T}} \left\{ -\frac{\partial \boldsymbol{\alpha}(\mathbf{x}_{1})}{\partial \mathbf{x}_{1}}\mathbf{f}_{1}(\mathbf{x}_{1},\mathbf{x}_{2}) + \mathbf{f}_{2}(\mathbf{x}_{1},\mathbf{x}_{2}) - \mathbf{f}_{2}(\mathbf{x}_{1},\mathbf{x}_{2}) + \frac{\partial \boldsymbol{\alpha}(\mathbf{x}_{1})}{\partial \mathbf{x}_{1}}\mathbf{f}_{1}(\mathbf{x}_{1},\mathbf{x}_{2}) - \left[ \frac{\partial V(\mathbf{x}_{1})}{\partial \mathbf{x}_{1}}\mathbf{G}(\mathbf{x}_{1},\mathbf{x}_{2} - \boldsymbol{\alpha}(\mathbf{x}_{1})) \right]^{\mathrm{T}} - c(\mathbf{x}_{2} - \boldsymbol{\alpha}(\mathbf{x}_{1})) \right\}$$

$$= \frac{\partial V}{\partial \mathbf{x}_{1}} \left\{ \mathbf{f}_{1}(\mathbf{x}_{1},\mathbf{x}_{2}) - \mathbf{G}(\mathbf{x}_{1},\mathbf{x}_{2} - \boldsymbol{\alpha}(\mathbf{x}_{1}))(\mathbf{x}_{2} - \boldsymbol{\alpha}(\mathbf{x}_{1})) \right\}$$

$$- c \|\mathbf{x}_{2} - \boldsymbol{\alpha}(\mathbf{x}_{1})\|_{2}^{2}.$$

$$(4.48)$$

Replacing  $\mathbf{x}_2$  with  $\mathbf{x}_2 - \boldsymbol{\alpha}(\mathbf{x}_1)$  in (4.44), we get

$$\mathbf{G}(\mathbf{x}_1, \mathbf{x}_2 - \boldsymbol{\alpha}(\mathbf{x}_1))(\mathbf{x}_2 - \boldsymbol{\alpha}(\mathbf{x}_1)) = \mathbf{f}_1(\mathbf{x}_1, \mathbf{x}_2) - \mathbf{f}_1(\mathbf{x}_1, \boldsymbol{\alpha}(\mathbf{x}_1))$$
(4.49)

Hence, for (4.48) we have

$$\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t}V_a = \underbrace{\frac{\partial V}{\partial \mathbf{x}_1} \mathbf{f}_1(\mathbf{x}_1, \boldsymbol{\alpha}(\mathbf{x}_1))}_{=\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t}V(\mathbf{x}_1)<0} - c\|\mathbf{x}_2 - \boldsymbol{\alpha}(\mathbf{x}_1)\|_2^2 < 0 .$$
(4.50)

Thus, Theorem 4.2 is proven.

As an application example, consider the *active damping system* of a vehicle shown in Figure 4.1, also see Figure 5.5.

A hydraulic actuator is mounted in parallel to a spring-damper system with the spring constant  $k_s$  and the damping constant  $d_s$  between the vehicle chassis and the suspension. The inflow q of oil into the hydraulic actuator can be adjusted via a current-controlled servo valve. The dynamics of the servo valve are approximated by a first-order time delay

Lecture Nonlinear Dynamical Systems and Control (SS 2025) ©A. Deutschmann-Olek and A. Kugi, Institut für Automatisierungs- und Regelungstechnik, TU Wien



Figure 4.1: Active vehicle damping system.

element in the form

$$\dot{x}_v = -c_v x_v + k_v i_v, \qquad c_v, \, k_v > 0 \tag{4.51}$$

describing the spool position  $x_v$  and the serve current as input  $i_v$ . The oil flow q then results from the relationship (compare to (1.49))

$$q = \begin{cases} K_{v,1}\sqrt{p_S - p}x_v & \text{for } x_v \ge 0\\ K_{v,2}\sqrt{p - p_T}x_v & \text{for } x_v \le 0 \end{cases}$$
(4.52)

with the tank pressure  $p_T$ , the supply pressure  $p_S$ , the pressure in the cylinder p, and the valve coefficients  $K_{v,1}$  and  $K_{v,2}$ . For simplicity, assuming the oil is incompressible, i.e.,  $\frac{d}{dt}p = 0$ , and neglecting the leakage oil flows, (4.51) and (4.52) can be written as follows

$$\frac{\dot{q}}{K_{v,1}\sqrt{p_S - p}} = -c_v \frac{q}{K_{v,1}\sqrt{p_S - p}} + k_v i_v, \qquad x_v \ge 0$$
(4.53a)

$$\frac{\dot{q}}{K_{v,2}\sqrt{p-p_T}} = -c_v \frac{q}{K_{v,2}\sqrt{p-p_T}} + k_v i_v, \qquad x_v \le 0$$
(4.53b)

The state feedback, also called servo compensation,

$$i_{v} = \begin{cases} \frac{i_{v}^{*}}{K_{v,1}\sqrt{p_{S}-p}} & \text{for } x_{v} \ge 0\\ \frac{i_{v}^{*}}{K_{v,2}\sqrt{p-p_{T}}} & \text{for } x_{v} \le 0 \end{cases}$$
(4.54)

with the new input  $i_v^*$  then leads to the differential equation for the oil flow

$$\dot{q} = -c_v q + k_v i_v^* \,. \tag{4.55}$$

Furthermore, due to the assumption of oil incompressibility, the relation

$$\dot{x}_a = \frac{q}{A} \tag{4.56}$$

holds with the piston area A. Now, a damping behavior of the form

$$q = \alpha(x_a) = -A\left(d_1x_a + d_2x_a^3\right), \qquad d_1, \, d_2 > 0 \,, \tag{4.57}$$

is desired, where for small displacements  $(x_a \ll)$  a linear behavior is assumed  $(x_a^3 \text{ is negligible compared to } x_a)$ , and for larger displacements, damping proportional to the third power of  $x_a$  is considered. This allows the application of the backstepping method from Theorem 4.2 with n = p = 1,  $\mathbf{x}_1 = x_a$ ,  $\mathbf{x}_2 = q$ ,  $\mathbf{u} = k_v i_v^*$ ,  $\mathbf{f}_1(\mathbf{x}_1, \mathbf{x}_2) = \frac{q}{A}$ , and  $\mathbf{f}_2(\mathbf{x}_1, \mathbf{x}_2) = -c_v q$ :

(1) The equilibrium  $x_a = 0$  of the system (4.56) with the fictitious state feedback (4.57) is asymptotically stable, which can be directly shown with the Lyapunov function

$$V(x_a) = \frac{1}{2}x_a^2 \tag{4.58}$$

and its time derivative along a solution of the system

$$\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t}V(x_a) = -\left(d_1x_a^2 + d_2x_a^4\right) < 0 \tag{4.59}$$

(2) In this case, the auxiliary quantity (4.40) reads

$$G(x_a, q) = \int_0^1 \frac{\partial}{\partial q} \left(\frac{q}{A}\right) \Big|_{q=\alpha(x_a)+\lambda q} d\lambda = \frac{1}{A} .$$
(4.60)

(3) The state feedback according to (4.45) is given by

$$k_v i_v^* = c_v q + \frac{\partial \alpha(x_a)}{\partial x_a} \frac{q}{A} - \frac{\partial V(x_a)}{\partial x_a} \frac{1}{A} - c(q - \alpha(x_a)), \qquad c > 0 \qquad (4.61)$$

or with the choice  $c = c_v$  we obtain

$$i_v^* = \frac{1}{k_v} \left( -c_v A \left( d_1 x_a + d_2 x_a^3 \right) - \left( d_1 + 3 d_2 x_a^2 \right) q - x_a \frac{1}{A} \right) \,. \tag{4.62}$$

As one can easily verify,

$$V_a(x_a, q) = \underbrace{\frac{1}{2}x_a^2}_{V(x_a)} + \frac{1}{2} \left( q + \underbrace{A(d_1x_a + d_2x_a^3)}_{-\alpha(x_a)} \right)^2$$
(4.63)

is the corresponding Lyapunov function of the closed loop system given by (4.46).

Therefore, the state feedback for the servo current command of the servo valve consists of (4.54) and (4.62).

*Exercise* 4.5. Given is the mathematical model (1.15) of the rotational motion of a satellite as shown in Figure 1.1

$$\Theta_{11}\dot{\omega}_1 = -(\Theta_{33} - \Theta_{22})\omega_2\omega_3 + M_1 \tag{4.64a}$$

$$\Theta_{11}\dot{\omega}_1 = -(\Theta_{33} - \Theta_{22})\omega_2\omega_3 + M_1$$
(4.64a)  
$$\Theta_{22}\dot{\omega}_2 = -(\Theta_{11} - \Theta_{33})\omega_1\omega_3 + M_2$$
(4.64b)

$$\Theta_{33}\dot{\omega}_3 = -(\Theta_{22} - \Theta_{11})\omega_1\omega_2 + M_3 \tag{4.64c}$$

with the angular velocities  $\omega_1$ ,  $\omega_2$ ,  $\omega_3$ , the moments of inertia  $\Theta_{11}$ ,  $\Theta_{22}$ ,  $\Theta_{33}$ , and the moments  $M_1$ ,  $M_2$ , and  $M_3$  around the principal axes of inertia.

- (1) In a first step, design a controller using the Computed-Torque method according to Section 4.5 so that the equilibrium  $\omega_{1,R} = \omega_{2,R} = \omega_{3,R} = 0$  is asymptotically stabilized.
- (2) Now assume that the cold gas thrusters in the  $x_3$  axis have failed, i.e.,  $M_3 = 0$ . Design a state feedback controller according to Theorem 4.2 in such a way that for this case, the equilibrium of the closed loop system  $\omega_{1,R} = \omega_{2,R} = \omega_{3,R} = 0$ remains globally asymptotically stable. Why can the Computed-Torque method no longer be applied here?

#### 4.3 Adaptive Control

In this section, some basic concepts of Lyapunov-based adaptive control are discussed using simple examples. To illustrate the idea, consider the simple nonlinear system

$$\dot{x} = u + \theta \varphi(x) \tag{4.65}$$

with the state  $x \in \mathbb{R}$ , the control input  $u \in \mathbb{R}$ , and the unknown but constant parameter  $\theta \in \mathbb{R}$ . Assuming in a first step that the parameter  $\theta$  is known, the equilibrium x = 0 is asymptotically stabilized by the state feedback

$$u = -\theta \varphi(x) - c_1 x, \quad \text{with} \quad c_1 > 0.$$
 (4.66)

A possible Lyapunov function is given by

$$V(x) = \frac{1}{2}x^2 > 0, \qquad \dot{V}(x) = -c_1 x^2 < 0.$$
 (4.67)

Substituting an estimated value  $\hat{\theta}$  for the unknown parameter  $\theta$  in the state feedback (4.66), the change of  $V(x) = \frac{1}{2}x^2$  along a solution curve of the closed loop system is given by

$$\dot{x} = -c_1 x - \hat{\theta} \varphi(x) + \theta \varphi(x) = -c_1 x - \underbrace{\left(\hat{\theta} - \theta\right)}_{=\tilde{\theta}} \varphi(x) .$$
(4.68)

Lecture Nonlinear Dynamical Systems and Control (SS 2025) ©A. Deutschmann-Olek and A. Kugi, Institut für Automatisierungs- und Regelungstechnik, TU Wien

The expression for the change of  $V(x) = \frac{1}{2}x^2$  along a solution curve of the closed loop system is

$$\dot{V}(x) = -c_1 x^2 - \tilde{\theta} \varphi(x) x . \qquad (4.69)$$

To eliminate the indefinite term in the *estimation error*  $\tilde{\theta}$ , the Lyapunov function is extended by an additional quadratic term

$$V_e\left(x,\tilde{\theta}\right) = V(x) + \frac{1}{2\gamma}\tilde{\theta}^2 = \frac{1}{2}x^2 + \frac{1}{2\gamma}\tilde{\theta}^2 > 0, \qquad \gamma > 0$$

$$(4.70)$$

and the change of  $V_e(x, \tilde{\theta})$  along a solution curve of (4.68) is calculated as

$$\dot{V}_e\left(x,\tilde{\theta}\right) = -c_1 x^2 + \tilde{\theta}\left(-\varphi(x)x + \frac{1}{\gamma}\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t}\tilde{\theta}\right).$$
(4.71)

The differential equation of the estimated value  $\hat{\theta}$  is then determined such that the bracketed expression in (4.71) vanishes, i.e.,

$$\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t}\tilde{\theta} = \frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t}\left(\hat{\theta} - \theta\right) = \frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t}\hat{\theta} = \gamma\varphi(x)x , \qquad (4.72)$$

resulting in  $\dot{V}_e(x, \tilde{\theta})$  as

$$\dot{V}_e\left(x,\tilde{\theta}\right) = -c_1 x^2 \le 0 \tag{4.73}$$

From Theorem 3.4, it is immediately clear that  $\lim_{t\to\infty} x(t) = 0$ .

The assumption that the (nonlinear) state feedback stabilizes the system for known parameters  $\theta$  is also referred to in the literature as the *certainty equivalence property*, which is essential for a variety of adaptive controller design methods. Furthermore, it is easy to see that the unknown parameter  $\theta$  affects the system (4.65) in the same way as the control input u, and thus the effect of the term  $\theta\varphi(x)$  can be easily compensated for known  $\theta$  through the control input. This structural property is also known in the literature as the *matching condition*. In the next part of this section, it will be shown that the design of the parameter estimator still analogous even when the matching condition is violated to the extent that the control input u affects the system with the unknown  $\theta$ only after one integrator. In this context, it is also referred to as the *extended matching condition*. Hence, the associated system with the extended matching condition for the parameter  $\theta$  takes the form

$$\dot{x}_1 = x_2 + \theta \varphi(x_1) \tag{4.74a}$$

$$\dot{x}_2 = u$$
. (4.74b)

In the first step, design a state feedback using the simple integrator backstepping method assuming that the parameter  $\theta$  is known (certainty equivalence property). For the fictitious control input

$$x_2 = -\theta\varphi(x_1) - c_1 x_1, \qquad c_1 > 0 \tag{4.75}$$

Lecture Nonlinear Dynamical Systems and Control (SS 2025) ©A. Deutschmann-Olek and A. Kugi, Institut für Automatisierungs- und Regelungstechnik, TU Wien

the asymptotic stability of the equilibrium  $x_1 = 0$  of the first subsystem immediately follows with the Lyapunov function

$$V(x_1) = \frac{1}{2}x_1^2 > 0, \qquad \dot{V}(x_1) = -c_1x_1^2 < 0.$$
 (4.76)

Setting the Lyapunov function of the overall system as

$$V_a(x_1, x_2) = \frac{1}{2}x_1^2 + \frac{1}{2}(x_2 + \theta\varphi(x_1) + c_1x_1)^2$$
(4.77)

and calculating the control input  $\boldsymbol{u}$  from

$$\dot{V}_{a}(x_{1}, x_{2}) = \underbrace{x_{1}(x_{2} + \theta\varphi(x_{1}))}_{=-c_{1}x_{1}^{2} + (x_{2} + \theta\varphi(x_{1}) + c_{1}x_{1})x_{1}} + (x_{2} + \theta\varphi(x_{1}) + c_{1}x_{1})$$

$$\times \left(u + \left(\theta \frac{\partial}{\partial x_{1}}\varphi(x_{1}) + c_{1}\right)(x_{2} + \theta\varphi(x_{1}))\right)$$

$$= -c_{1}x_{1}^{2} + (x_{2} + \theta\varphi(x_{1}) + c_{1}x_{1})$$

$$\times \underbrace{\left(u + \left(\theta \frac{\partial}{\partial x_{1}}\varphi(x_{1}) + c_{1}\right)(x_{2} + \theta\varphi(x_{1})) + x_{1}\right)}_{=-c_{2}(x_{2} + \theta\varphi(x_{1}) + c_{1}x_{1}), \quad c_{2} > 0}$$

$$(4.78)$$

yields

$$u = -\left(\theta \frac{\partial}{\partial x_1}\varphi(x_1) + c_1\right)(x_2 + \theta\varphi(x_1)) - x_1 - c_2(x_2 + \theta\varphi(x_1) + c_1x_1) .$$
(4.79)

To calculate the state feedback and the parameter estimator for a constant but unknown parameter  $\theta$ , the following Lyapunov function

$$V_e\left(x_1, x_2, \tilde{\theta}\right) = \frac{1}{2}x_1^2 + \frac{1}{2}\left(x_2 + \hat{\theta}\varphi(x_1) + c_1x_1\right)^2 + \frac{1}{2\gamma}\tilde{\theta}^2, \qquad \gamma > 0$$
(4.80)

with the parameter estimation error  $\tilde{\theta} = \hat{\theta} - \theta$  is used. The time derivative of  $V_a(x_1, x_2, \tilde{\theta})$  is given by

$$\dot{V}_{e} = \underbrace{x_{1}(x_{2} + \theta\varphi(x_{1}))}_{=-c_{1}x_{1}^{2} + (x_{2} + \hat{\theta}\varphi(x_{1}) + c_{1}x_{1})x_{1} - \tilde{\theta}\varphi(x_{1})x_{1}}_{=-c_{1}x_{1}^{2} + (x_{2} + \theta\varphi(x_{1}) + c_{1}x_{1})(x_{2} + \theta\varphi(x_{1})) + \varphi(x_{1})\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t}\hat{\theta}) + \frac{1}{\gamma}\tilde{\theta}\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t}\hat{\theta}$$

$$= -c_{1}x_{1}^{2} + \left(x_{2} + \hat{\theta}\varphi(x_{1}) + c_{1}x_{1}\right) \times \underbrace{\left(u + \left(\hat{\theta}\frac{\partial}{\partial x_{1}}\varphi(x_{1}) + c_{1}\right)\left(x_{2} + \hat{\theta}\varphi(x_{1})\right) + x_{1} + \frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t}\hat{\theta}\varphi(x_{1})\right)}_{=-c_{2}(x_{2} + \hat{\theta}\varphi(x_{1}) + c_{1}x_{1}), \quad c_{2} > 0}$$

$$+ \tilde{\theta}\underbrace{\left(-\varphi(x_{1})x_{1} + \frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t}\hat{\theta}\frac{1}{\gamma} - \left(x_{2} + \hat{\theta}\varphi(x_{1}) + c_{1}x_{1}\right)\left(\hat{\theta}\frac{\partial}{\partial x_{1}}\varphi(x_{1}) + c_{1}\right)\varphi(x_{1})\right)}_{=0}$$

$$(4.81)$$

The state feedback and the parameter estimator then follow as

$$u = -\left(\hat{\theta}\frac{\partial}{\partial x_1}\varphi(x_1) + c_1\right)\left(x_2 + \hat{\theta}\varphi(x_1)\right) - x_1 - \frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t}\hat{\theta}\varphi(x_1) - c_2\left(x_2 + \hat{\theta}\varphi(x_1) + c_1x_1\right)$$
(4.82)

and

$$\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t}\hat{\theta} = \gamma\varphi(x_1)\left(x_1 + \left(x_2 + \hat{\theta}\varphi(x_1) + c_1x_1\right)\left(\hat{\theta}\frac{\partial}{\partial x_1}\varphi(x_1) + c_1\right)\right).$$
(4.83)

As an application example, consider the mathematical model of a simplified biochemical process of the form

$$\dot{x}_1 = [\varphi_0(x_2) + \theta_1 \varphi_1(x_2) + \theta_2 \varphi_2(x_2)] x_1 - Dx_1$$
(4.84a)

$$\dot{x}_2 = -k[\varphi_0(x_2) + \theta_1\varphi_1(x_2) + \theta_2\varphi_2(x_2)]x_1 - Dx_2 + u$$
(4.84b)

with  $x_1$  as the concentration of the bacterial population,  $x_2$  as the concentration of the substrate, the specific growth rate  $\mu(x_2) = [\varphi_0(x_2) + \theta_1\varphi_1(x_2) + \theta_2\varphi_2(x_2)]$  with the unknown but constant parameters  $\theta_1$  and  $\theta_2$ , the substrate feed rate u as the input, and the system parameters D and k. Note that both the state variables  $x_1$  and  $x_2$  as well as the specific growth rate  $\mu(x_2)$  are always non-negative. The task of control is now to regulate the concentration of the bacterial population  $x_1$  to a predetermined reference value  $x_{1,d}$ .

In the first step, one performs a regular state transformation of the form

$$z_1 = \ln(x_1) - \ln(x_{1,d})$$
 bzw.  $x_1 = x_{1,d} \exp(z_1)$  (4.85a)

$$z_2 = x_2$$
 bzw.  $x_2 = z_2$  (4.85b)

Lecture Nonlinear Dynamical Systems and Control (SS 2025) @A. Deutschmann-Olek and A. Kugi, Institut für Automatisierungs- und Regelungstechnik, TU Wien

and the system (4.84) in the new state  $\mathbf{z}^{\mathrm{T}} = [z_1, z_2]$  reads

$$\dot{z}_1 = [\varphi_0(z_2) + \theta_1 \varphi_1(z_2) + \theta_2 \varphi_2(z_2)] - D$$
(4.86a)

$$\dot{z}_2 = -k[\varphi_0(z_2) + \theta_1\varphi_1(z_2) + \theta_2\varphi_2(z_2)]x_{1,d}\exp(z_1) - Dz_2 + u .$$
(4.86b)

If one interprets  $\varphi_0(z_2)$  as a fictitious input in the first differential equation of (4.86), it can be easily verified that the control law

$$\varphi_0(z_2) = -\theta_1 \varphi_1(z_2) - \theta_2 \varphi_2(z_2) + D - c_1 z_1, \qquad c_1 > 0$$
(4.87)

asymptotically stabilizes the desired equilibrium  $z_{1,d} = 0$   $(x_1 = x_{1,d})$ . In this context, one chooses the Lyapunov function as

$$V(z_1) = \frac{1}{2}z_1^2 > 0, \qquad \dot{V}(z_1) = -c_1 z_1^2 < 0.$$
 (4.88)

To derive the state feedback and the parameter estimator for  $\boldsymbol{\theta}^{\mathrm{T}} = [\theta_1, \theta_2]$ , one chooses a similar Lyapunov function as shown before, i.e.,

$$V_e\left(\mathbf{z},\tilde{\boldsymbol{\theta}}\right) = \frac{1}{2}z_1^2 + \frac{1}{2}\left(\varphi_0(z_2) + \hat{\boldsymbol{\theta}}^{\mathrm{T}}\varphi_{12}(z_2) - D + c_1z_1\right)^2 + \frac{1}{2}\tilde{\boldsymbol{\theta}}^{\mathrm{T}}\boldsymbol{\Gamma}^{-1}\tilde{\boldsymbol{\theta}}$$
(4.89a)

with

$$\hat{\boldsymbol{\theta}}^{\mathrm{T}} = \begin{bmatrix} \hat{\theta}_1, \hat{\theta}_2 \end{bmatrix}, \qquad \boldsymbol{\varphi}_{12}(z_2) = \begin{bmatrix} \varphi_1(z_2) \\ \varphi_2(z_2) \end{bmatrix}, \qquad \tilde{\boldsymbol{\theta}} = \begin{bmatrix} \tilde{\theta}_1 \\ \tilde{\theta}_2 \end{bmatrix} = \hat{\boldsymbol{\theta}} - \boldsymbol{\theta} \qquad (4.89b)$$

and the positive definite matrix  $\Gamma$ . The change of the Lyapunov function  $V_e(\mathbf{z}, \tilde{\theta})$  along a solution of the system (4.86) is calculated as

$$\begin{split} \dot{V}_{e}(\mathbf{z},\tilde{\boldsymbol{\theta}}) &= z_{1}(\varphi_{0}(z_{2}) + \theta^{T}\varphi_{12}(z_{2}) - D) + \left(\varphi_{0}(z_{2}) + \hat{\theta}^{T}\varphi_{12}(z_{2}) - D + c_{1}z_{1}\right) \\ &\times \left(\left(\frac{\partial}{\partial z_{2}}\varphi_{0}(z_{2}) + \hat{\theta}^{T}\frac{\partial}{\partial z_{2}}\varphi_{12}(z_{2})\right)\dot{z}_{2} + c_{1}\dot{z}_{1} + \frac{d}{dt}\hat{\theta}^{T}\varphi_{12}(z_{2})\right) + \tilde{\theta}^{T}\Gamma^{-1}\frac{d}{dt}\tilde{\theta} \\ &= z_{1}\left(\left[\varphi_{0}(z_{2}) + \hat{\theta}^{T}\varphi_{12}(z_{2}) - D + c_{1}z_{1}\right] - c_{1}z_{1} - \hat{\theta}^{T}\varphi_{12}(z_{2})\right) \\ &+ \left(\left(\frac{\partial}{\partial z_{2}}\varphi_{0}(z_{2}) + \hat{\theta}^{T}\varphi_{12}(z_{2}) - D + c_{1}z_{1}\right) + \tilde{\theta}^{T}\Gamma^{-1}\frac{d}{dt}\tilde{\theta} \\ &= -c_{1}z_{1}^{2} + \left(\varphi_{0}(z_{2}) + \hat{\theta}^{T}\varphi_{12}(z_{2}) - D + c_{1}z_{1}\right) \left(\left(\frac{\partial}{\partial z_{2}}\varphi_{0}(z_{2}) + \hat{\theta}^{T}\frac{\partial}{\partial z_{2}}\varphi_{12}(z_{2})\right)\dot{z}_{2} \\ &+ c_{1}\dot{z}_{1} + \frac{d}{dt}\hat{\theta}^{T}\varphi_{12}(z_{2}) + z_{1}\right) + \tilde{\theta}^{T}\left(-z_{1}\varphi_{12}(z_{2}) + \Gamma^{-1}\frac{d}{dt}\tilde{\theta}\right) \\ &= -c_{1}z_{1}^{2} + \left(\varphi_{0}(z_{2}) + \hat{\theta}^{T}\varphi_{12}(z_{2}) - D + c_{1}z_{1}\right)\left\{\left(\frac{\partial}{\partial z_{2}}\varphi_{0}(z_{2}) + \hat{\theta}^{T}\frac{\partial}{\partial z_{2}}\varphi_{12}(z_{2})\right)\right) \\ &\times \left(-k\left[\varphi_{0}(z_{2}) + \hat{\theta}^{T}\varphi_{12}(z_{2})\right] x_{1,d}\exp(z_{1}) - Dz_{2} + u\right) \\ &+ c_{1}\left(\left[\varphi_{0}(z_{2}) + \hat{\theta}^{T}\varphi_{12}(z_{2})\right] - D\right) + \frac{d}{dt}\hat{\theta}^{T}\varphi_{12}(z_{2}) + z_{1}\right\} \\ &+ \tilde{\theta}^{T}\left(-z_{1}\varphi_{12}(z_{2}) + \Gamma^{-1}\frac{d}{dt}\tilde{\theta}\right) \\ &= -c_{1}z_{1}^{2} + \left(\varphi_{0}(z_{2}) + \hat{\theta}^{T}\varphi_{12}(z_{2}) - D + c_{1}z_{1}\right)\left\{\left(\frac{\partial}{\partial z_{2}}\varphi_{0}(z_{2}) + \hat{\theta}^{T}\frac{\partial}{\partial z_{2}}\varphi_{12}(z_{2})\right)\right) \\ &\times \left(-k\left[\varphi_{0}(z_{2}) + \hat{\theta}^{T}\varphi_{12}(z_{2})\right] - D\right) + \frac{d}{dt}\hat{\theta}^{T}\varphi_{12}(z_{2}) + z_{1}\right\} \\ &+ \tilde{\theta}^{T}\left(-z_{1}\varphi_{12}(z_{2}) + \Gamma^{-1}\frac{d}{dt}\tilde{\theta}\right) \\ &= -c_{1}z_{1}^{2} + \left(\varphi_{0}(z_{2}) + \hat{\theta}^{T}\varphi_{12}(z_{2})\right) - D + c_{1}z_{1}\right) \\ &\times \left[\left(\frac{\partial}{\partial z_{2}}\varphi_{0}(z_{2}) + \hat{\theta}^{T}\varphi_{12}(z_{2})\right] - D\right) + \frac{d}{dt}\hat{\theta}^{T}\varphi_{12}(z_{2}) + z_{1}\right\} \\ &+ \tilde{\theta}^{T}\left\{-z_{1}\varphi_{12}(z_{2}) + \Gamma^{-1}\frac{d}{dt}\tilde{\theta} + \left(\varphi_{0}(z_{2}) + \hat{\theta}^{T}\varphi_{12}(z_{2}) - D + c_{1}z_{1}\right) \\ &\times \left[\left(\frac{\partial}{\partial z_{2}}\varphi_{0}(z_{2}) + \hat{\theta}^{T}\frac{\partial}{\partial z_{2}}\varphi_{12}(z_{2})\right)k\varphi_{1}(z_{2})x_{1,d}\exp(z_{1}) - c_{1}\varphi_{1}(z_{2})\right]\right\}. \end{split}$$

Exercise 4.6. Calculate the relation (4.90).Tip: Take your time for this task.

The state feedback is obtained by setting the simply underlined expression in (4.90)

Lecture Nonlinear Dynamical Systems and Control (SS 2025) ©A. Deutschmann-Olek and A. Kugi, Institut für Automatisierungs- und Regelungstechnik, TU Wien

equal to  $-c_2\left(\varphi_0(z_2) + \hat{\boldsymbol{\theta}}^{\mathrm{T}} \boldsymbol{\varphi}_{12}(z_2) - D + c_1 z_1\right)$ , where  $c_2 > 0$ , and the parameter estimator follows directly by setting to zero the double underlined expression in (4.90) and the fact that  $\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t} \hat{\boldsymbol{\theta}} = \frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t} \hat{\boldsymbol{\theta}}$ .

## 4.4 PD control law for rigid body systems

If  $\mathbf{q}^{\mathrm{T}} = [q_1, q_2, \dots, q_n]$  denotes the generalized coordinates of a mechanical rigid body system, then the equations of motion are obtained from the so-called Euler-Lagrange equations

$$\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t} \left( \frac{\partial}{\partial \dot{q}_k} L \right) - \frac{\partial}{\partial q_k} L = \tau_k , \qquad k = 1, \dots, n$$
(4.91)

with the generalized velocities  $\dot{\mathbf{q}} = \frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t}\mathbf{q}$ , the generalized forces or moments  $\boldsymbol{\tau}^{\mathrm{T}} = [\tau_1, \tau_2, \ldots, \tau_n]$ , and the Lagrangian L. For rigid body systems, the Lagrangian always results from the difference between kinetic and potential energy, that is, L = T - V. Under the assumption that

(1) the kinetic energy T can be expressed as a quadratic function of the generalized velocities  $\dot{\mathbf{q}}$  in the form

$$T = \frac{1}{2} \sum_{j=1}^{n} \sum_{i=1}^{n} d_{ij}(\mathbf{q}) \dot{q}_i \dot{q}_j = \frac{1}{2} \dot{\mathbf{q}}^{\mathrm{T}} \mathbf{D}(\mathbf{q}) \dot{\mathbf{q}}$$
(4.92)

with the symmetric, positive definite generalized mass matrix  $\mathbf{D}(\mathbf{q})$ , and

(2) the potential energy  $V(\mathbf{q})$  is independent of  $\dot{\mathbf{q}}$ ,

the equations of motion (4.91) can be written in the form

$$\mathbf{D}(\mathbf{q})\ddot{\mathbf{q}} + \mathbf{C}(\mathbf{q}, \dot{\mathbf{q}})\dot{\mathbf{q}} + \mathbf{g}(\mathbf{q}) = \boldsymbol{\tau}$$
(4.93)

To show this, substitute T from (4.92) and  $V(\mathbf{q})$  into the Euler-Lagrange equations (4.91) and with

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial \dot{q}_k} L = \sum_{j=1}^n d_{kj}(\mathbf{q}) \dot{q}_j , \qquad (4.94a)$$

$$\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t} \left( \frac{\partial}{\partial \dot{q}_k} L \right) = \sum_{j=1}^n d_{kj}(\mathbf{q}) \ddot{q}_j + \sum_{j=1}^n \frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t} d_{kj}(\mathbf{q}) \dot{q}_j$$

$$= \sum_{j=1}^n d_{kj}(\mathbf{q}) \ddot{q}_j + \sum_{j=1}^n \sum_{i=1}^n \frac{\partial}{\partial q_i} d_{kj}(\mathbf{q}) \dot{q}_i \dot{q}_j , \qquad (4.94\mathrm{b})$$

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial q_k} L = \frac{1}{2} \sum_{j=1}^n \sum_{i=1}^n \frac{\partial}{\partial q_k} d_{ij}(\mathbf{q}) \dot{q}_i \dot{q}_j - \frac{\partial}{\partial q_k} V$$
(4.94c)

(4.91) finally simplifies to

$$\sum_{j=1}^{n} d_{kj}(\mathbf{q})\ddot{q}_{j} + \underbrace{\sum_{j=1}^{n} \sum_{i=1}^{n} \left( \frac{\partial}{\partial q_{i}} d_{kj}(\mathbf{q}) - \frac{1}{2} \frac{\partial}{\partial q_{k}} d_{ij}(\mathbf{q}) \right) \dot{q}_{i}\dot{q}_{j}}_{B} + \frac{\partial}{\partial q_{k}} V = \tau_{k} .$$
(4.95)

Now, writing for

$$\sum_{j=1}^{n}\sum_{i=1}^{n}\frac{\partial}{\partial q_{i}}d_{kj}(\mathbf{q})\dot{q}_{i}\dot{q}_{j} = \frac{1}{2}\sum_{j=1}^{n}\sum_{i=1}^{n}\left(\frac{\partial}{\partial q_{i}}d_{kj}(\mathbf{q}) + \frac{\partial}{\partial q_{j}}d_{ki}(\mathbf{q})\right)\dot{q}_{i}\dot{q}_{j} , \qquad (4.96)$$

the term B from (4.95) follows as

$$B = \sum_{j=1}^{n} \sum_{i=1}^{n} \underbrace{\frac{1}{2} \left( \frac{\partial}{\partial q_i} d_{kj}(\mathbf{q}) + \frac{\partial}{\partial q_j} d_{ki}(\mathbf{q}) - \frac{\partial}{\partial q_k} d_{ij}(\mathbf{q}) \right)}_{c_{ijk}(\mathbf{q})} \dot{q}_i \dot{q}_j , \qquad (4.97)$$

where the terms  $c_{ijk}(\mathbf{q})$  are referred to as *Christoffel symbols of the first kind*. Furthermore, if we set  $\frac{\partial V}{\partial q_k}(\mathbf{q}) = g_k(\mathbf{q})$ , then from (4.95) and (4.97) we immediately obtain the equations of motion in the form

$$\sum_{j=1}^{n} d_{kj}(\mathbf{q}) \ddot{q}_j + \sum_{j=1}^{n} \sum_{i=1}^{n} c_{ijk}(\mathbf{q}) \dot{q}_i \dot{q}_j + g_k(\mathbf{q}) = \tau_k .$$
(4.98)

As can be seen, the equations of motion (4.98) contain three different terms - those involving the second derivative of the generalized coordinates (*acceleration terms*), those where the product  $\dot{q}_i\dot{q}_j$  appears (*centrifugal terms* for i = j and *Coriolis terms* for  $i \neq j$ ), and those that depend solely on **q** (*potential forces*). As stated above, the equations of motion can thus be written in matrix form

$$\mathbf{D}(\mathbf{q})\ddot{\mathbf{q}} + \mathbf{C}(\mathbf{q}, \dot{\mathbf{q}})\dot{\mathbf{q}} + \mathbf{g}(\mathbf{q}) = \boldsymbol{\tau}$$
(4.99)

with the (k, j)-th element of the matrix  $\mathbf{C}(\mathbf{q}, \dot{\mathbf{q}})$  given by

$$\mathbf{C}(\mathbf{q}, \dot{\mathbf{q}})[k, j] = \sum_{i=1}^{n} c_{ijk}(\mathbf{q}) \dot{q}_i$$
(4.100)

*Exercise* 4.7. Transform the mathematical models from Exercise 1.6 and 1.7 into the structure of (4.99).

For stability considerations, the following essential theorem now applies:

**Theorem 4.3.** The matrix

$$\mathbf{N}(\mathbf{q}, \dot{\mathbf{q}}) = \dot{\mathbf{D}}(\mathbf{q}) - 2\mathbf{C}(\mathbf{q}, \dot{\mathbf{q}})$$
(4.101)

is skew-symmetric, i.e.,

$$n_{jk}(\mathbf{q}, \dot{\mathbf{q}}) = -n_{kj}(\mathbf{q}, \dot{\mathbf{q}}) \ . \tag{4.102}$$

Lecture Nonlinear Dynamical Systems and Control (SS 2025) @A. Deutschmann-Olek and A. Kugi, Institut für Automatisierungs- und Regelungstechnik, TU Wien

*Proof.* To prove this, consider the (j, k)-th component of the matrix  $\mathbf{N}(\mathbf{q}, \dot{\mathbf{q}})$  in the form

$$n_{jk} = \sum_{i=1}^{n} \left( \frac{\partial}{\partial q_i} d_{jk}(\mathbf{q}) - 2c_{ikj}(\mathbf{q}) \right) \dot{q}_i$$

$$= \sum_{i=1}^{n} \left( \frac{\partial}{\partial q_i} d_{jk}(\mathbf{q}) - \frac{\partial}{\partial q_i} d_{jk}(\mathbf{q}) - \frac{\partial}{\partial q_k} d_{ji}(\mathbf{q}) + \frac{\partial}{\partial q_j} d_{ik}(\mathbf{q}) \right) \dot{q}_i$$
(4.103)

then it follows

$$n_{jk} = \sum_{i=1}^{n} \left( -\frac{\partial}{\partial q_k} d_{ji}(\mathbf{q}) + \frac{\partial}{\partial q_j} d_{ik}(\mathbf{q}) \right) \dot{q}_i \tag{4.104}$$

or by interchanging the indices j and k

$$n_{kj} = \sum_{i=1}^{n} \left( -\frac{\partial}{\partial q_j} d_{ki}(\mathbf{q}) + \frac{\partial}{\partial q_k} d_{ij}(\mathbf{q}) \right) \dot{q}_i \tag{4.105}$$

and taking into account the symmetry of the mass matrix  $\mathbf{D}(\mathbf{q})$ , i.e.,  $d_{ki}(\mathbf{q}) = d_{ik}(\mathbf{q})$ , we immediately obtain the result  $n_{jk} = -n_{kj}$ .

In the next step, we will show how a *PD control law* can asymptotically stabilize a constant desired position of the generalized coordinates  $\mathbf{q}_d$ . For this purpose, a control law of the form

$$\boldsymbol{\tau} = \mathbf{K}_{P} \underbrace{(\mathbf{q}_{d} - \mathbf{q})}_{\mathbf{e}_{q}} - \mathbf{K}_{D} \dot{\mathbf{q}} + \mathbf{g}(\mathbf{q})$$
(4.106)

is used with the positive definite matrices  $\mathbf{K}_P$  and  $\mathbf{K}_D$ , where the compensation of the potential forces  $\mathbf{g}(\mathbf{q})$  guarantees that  $\mathbf{q} = \mathbf{q}_d$  is an equilibrium of the closed loop. With the positive definite function

$$V(\mathbf{q}, \dot{\mathbf{q}}) = \frac{1}{2} \dot{\mathbf{q}}^{\mathrm{T}} \mathbf{D}(\mathbf{q}) \dot{\mathbf{q}} + \frac{1}{2} \mathbf{e}_{q}^{\mathrm{T}} \mathbf{K}_{P} \mathbf{e}_{q}$$
(4.107)

as the Lyapunov function and its time derivative along the solution of the closed loop (4.99) and (4.106)

$$\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t}V(\mathbf{q},\dot{\mathbf{q}}) = \dot{\mathbf{q}}^{\mathrm{T}}\mathbf{D}(\mathbf{q})\ddot{\mathbf{q}} + \frac{1}{2}\dot{\mathbf{q}}^{\mathrm{T}}\dot{\mathbf{D}}(\mathbf{q})\dot{\mathbf{q}} + \mathbf{e}_{q}^{\mathrm{T}}\mathbf{K}_{P}\dot{\mathbf{e}}_{q}$$

$$= \dot{\mathbf{q}}^{\mathrm{T}}(-\mathbf{C}(\mathbf{q},\dot{\mathbf{q}})\dot{\mathbf{q}} + \mathbf{K}_{P}(\mathbf{q}_{d} - \mathbf{q}) - \mathbf{K}_{D}\dot{\mathbf{q}}) + \frac{1}{2}\dot{\mathbf{q}}^{\mathrm{T}}\dot{\mathbf{D}}(\mathbf{q})\dot{\mathbf{q}} + \mathbf{e}_{q}^{\mathrm{T}}\mathbf{K}_{P}\underbrace{\dot{\mathbf{e}}_{q}}_{-\dot{\mathbf{q}}} \underbrace{\dot{\mathbf{e}}_{q}}_{-\dot{\mathbf{q}}} \underbrace{\dot{\mathbf{e}}}_{-\dot{\mathbf{q}}} \underbrace{\dot{\mathbf{e}}}_{-\dot{\mathbf{q}}} \underbrace{\dot{\mathbf{e}}}_{-\dot{\mathbf{q}}} \underbrace{\dot{\mathbf{e}}}_{-\dot{\mathbf{q}}} \underbrace{\dot{\mathbf{e}}}_{-\dot{\mathbf{q}}} \underbrace{\dot{\mathbf{e}}}_{-\dot{\mathbf{q}}} \underbrace{\dot{\mathbf{e}}}_{-\dot{\mathbf$$

the asymptotic stability of the desired position  $\mathbf{q}_d$  follows directly from the invariance principle of Krassovskii-LaSalle (see Theorem 3.4). It should be noted at this point that this PD control law (4.106) also leads to very good results for slowly varying desired trajectories  $\mathbf{q}_d(t)$  (i.e., where  $\dot{\mathbf{q}}_d(t)$  is very small).

Lecture Nonlinear Dynamical Systems and Control (SS 2025) ©A. Deutschmann-Olek and A. Kugi, Institut für Automatisierungs- und Regelungstechnik, TU Wien

*Exercise* 4.8. Design a PD controller for the mechanical systems in Exercise 1.6 and 1.7 according to (4.106). Choose suitable parameters and perform simulations of the closed-loop systems in MATLAB/SIMULINK.

*Exercise* 4.9. Figure 4.2 shows a robot with three degrees of freedom with rod masses  $m_i$ , rod lengths  $l_i$ , distances from the rod base to the center of mass  $l_{ci}$ , and moments of inertia  $I_{xxi}$ ,  $I_{yyi}$ ,  $I_{zzi}$  (all cross-moments are assumed to be zero) in the body-fixed coordinate system  $(x_i, y_i, z_i)$  for i = 1, 2, 3. A mass  $m_L$  is attached at the end of the third rod. The three degrees of freedom of the robot are the rotation around the  $z_1$  axis of rod 1, the rotation around the  $x_2$  axis of rod 2, and the rotation around the  $x_3$  axis of rod 3. The action of the actuators is idealized as torque  $\tau_i$  in the connecting joints.

Design a PD controller to stabilize a given desired position and simulate the control loop in MATLAB/SIMULINK. Use the following numerical values:  $m_1, m_2, m_3, m_L = 1$  kg,  $l_{c1}, l_{c2}, l_{c3} = 1/2$  m,  $l_1, l_2, l_3 = 1$  m,  $I_{xx1} = I_{yy1} = I_{xx2} = I_{zz2} = I_{xx3} = I_{zz3} = 0.1$  m<sup>4</sup>, and  $I_{zz1} = I_{yy2} = I_{yy3} = 0.02$  m<sup>4</sup>.



Figure 4.2: Robot with three degrees of freedom.

## 4.5 Inverse Dynamics (Computed-Torque)

Since the inertia matrix  $\mathbf{D}(\mathbf{q})$  in (4.99) is positive definite, it can also be inverted, and thus the *control law of inverse dynamics (Computed-Torque)* 

$$\boldsymbol{\tau} = \mathbf{D}(\mathbf{q})\mathbf{v} + \mathbf{C}(\mathbf{q}, \dot{\mathbf{q}})\dot{\mathbf{q}} + \mathbf{g}(\mathbf{q})$$
(4.109)

leads to a closed loop of the form

$$\ddot{\mathbf{q}} = \mathbf{v} \tag{4.110}$$

Lecture Nonlinear Dynamical Systems and Control (SS 2025) ©A. Deutschmann-Olek and A. Kugi, Institut für Automatisierungs- und Regelungstechnik, TU Wien

with the new input  $\mathbf{v}$ . One can now specify a controller for  $\mathbf{v}$  such that the error system converges globally asymptotically to a trajectory  $\mathbf{q}_d(t)$  that is twice continuously differentiable. For this purpose,  $\mathbf{v}$  is given in the form

$$\mathbf{v} = \ddot{\mathbf{q}}_d - \mathbf{K}_0 \underbrace{(\mathbf{q} - \mathbf{q}_d)}_{\mathbf{e}_q} - \mathbf{K}_1 \underbrace{(\dot{\mathbf{q}} - \dot{\mathbf{q}}_d)}_{\dot{\mathbf{e}}_q}$$
(4.111)

with suitable positive definite diagonal matrices  $\mathbf{K}_0$  and  $\mathbf{K}_1$ , and the error dynamics then reads

$$\ddot{\mathbf{e}}_q + \mathbf{K}_1 \dot{\mathbf{e}}_q + \mathbf{K}_0 \mathbf{e}_q = \mathbf{0} \ . \tag{4.112}$$

Hence, the error dynamics can be freely adjusted by choosing the matrices  $\mathbf{K}_0$  and  $\mathbf{K}_1$ .

*Exercise* 4.10. Design a controller for the mechanical systems of exercises 1.6 and 1.7 using the Computed-Torque method according to (4.109) and (4.111). Choose suitable parameters and perform simulations of the closed control loops in MATLAB/SIMULINK. Compare the results with those of exercise 4.8.

It is well known that system parameters such as masses, moments of inertia, etc., are generally not precisely known and therefore cannot be ideally compensated for, as shown in (4.109). However, the rigid body systems of the form (4.99) have the property that a parameter vector  $\mathbf{p} \in \mathbb{R}^m$  can always be found in such a way that it appears *linearly* in the equations of motion, i.e.,

$$\mathbf{D}(\mathbf{q})\ddot{\mathbf{q}} + \mathbf{C}(\mathbf{q}, \dot{\mathbf{q}})\dot{\mathbf{q}} + \mathbf{g}(\mathbf{q}) = \mathbf{Y}_0(\mathbf{q}, \dot{\mathbf{q}}, \ddot{\mathbf{q}}) + \mathbf{Y}_1(\mathbf{q}, \dot{\mathbf{q}}, \ddot{\mathbf{q}})\mathbf{p} = \boldsymbol{\tau}$$
(4.113)

with an (n, m)-matrix  $\mathbf{Y}_1(\mathbf{q}, \dot{\mathbf{q}}, \ddot{\mathbf{q}})$  and a vector  $\mathbf{Y}_0(\mathbf{q}, \dot{\mathbf{q}}, \ddot{\mathbf{q}})$  consisting of known functions. It should be noted that the entries of the parameter vector  $\mathbf{p}$  might themselves depend nonlinearly on the system's masses, lengths, etc. Now, if an estimated value  $\hat{\mathbf{p}}$  of the parameter vector  $\mathbf{p}$  is substituted into the control law (4.109), then the control law (4.109) and (4.111) becomes

$$\boldsymbol{\tau} = \hat{\mathbf{D}}(\mathbf{q})(\ddot{\mathbf{q}}_d - \mathbf{K}_0 \mathbf{e}_q - \mathbf{K}_1 \dot{\mathbf{e}}_q) + \hat{\mathbf{C}}(\mathbf{q}, \dot{\mathbf{q}})\dot{\mathbf{q}} + \hat{\mathbf{g}}(\mathbf{q})$$
(4.114)

and the error system (4.112) results in

$$\hat{\mathbf{D}}(\mathbf{q})(\ddot{\mathbf{e}}_{q} + \mathbf{K}_{0}\mathbf{e}_{q} + \mathbf{K}_{1}\dot{\mathbf{e}}_{q}) = \underbrace{\hat{\mathbf{D}}(\mathbf{q})\ddot{\mathbf{q}} + \hat{\mathbf{C}}(\mathbf{q},\dot{\mathbf{q}})\dot{\mathbf{q}} + \hat{\mathbf{g}}(\mathbf{q})}_{\mathbf{Y}_{0}(\mathbf{q},\dot{\mathbf{q}},\ddot{\mathbf{q}}) + \mathbf{Y}_{1}(\mathbf{q},\dot{\mathbf{q}},\ddot{\mathbf{q}})\hat{\mathbf{p}}} - \underbrace{\left(\underbrace{\mathbf{D}(\mathbf{q})\ddot{\mathbf{q}} + \mathbf{C}(\mathbf{q},\dot{\mathbf{q}})\dot{\mathbf{q}} + \mathbf{g}(\mathbf{q})}_{\mathbf{Y}_{0}(\mathbf{q},\dot{\mathbf{q}},\ddot{\mathbf{q}}) + \mathbf{Y}_{1}(\mathbf{q},\dot{\mathbf{q}},\ddot{\mathbf{q}})p}\right).$$
(4.115)

It should be mentioned at this point that the quantities  $\mathbf{D}$  and  $\hat{\mathbf{D}}$ ,  $\mathbf{C}$  and  $\hat{\mathbf{C}}$ , as well as  $\mathbf{g}$  and  $\hat{\mathbf{g}}$  differ only in that the parameter vector  $\mathbf{p}$  is replaced by  $\hat{\mathbf{p}}$ , but their entries remain functionally the same. Assuming the invertibility of  $\hat{\mathbf{D}}(\mathbf{q})$ , one can ultimately rewrite (4.115) in the form

$$\ddot{\mathbf{e}}_q + \mathbf{K}_0 \mathbf{e}_q + \mathbf{K}_1 \dot{\mathbf{e}}_q = \hat{\mathbf{D}}(\mathbf{q})^{-1} \mathbf{Y}_1(\mathbf{q}, \dot{\mathbf{q}}, \ddot{\mathbf{q}}) \tilde{\mathbf{p}} = \mathbf{\Phi} \tilde{\mathbf{p}}$$
(4.116)

Lecture Nonlinear Dynamical Systems and Control (SS 2025) ©A. Deutschmann-Olek and A. Kugi, Institut für Automatisierungs- und Regelungstechnik, TU Wien

or as a first-order differential equation system

$$\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t} \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{e}_{q} \\ \dot{\mathbf{e}}_{q} \end{bmatrix} = \underbrace{\begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{0}_{n,n} & \mathbf{E}_{n,n} \\ -\mathbf{K}_{0} & -\mathbf{K}_{1} \end{bmatrix}}_{\mathbf{A}} \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{e}_{q} \\ \dot{\mathbf{e}}_{q} \end{bmatrix} + \underbrace{\begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{0}_{n,n} \\ \mathbf{E}_{n,n} \end{bmatrix}}_{\mathbf{B}} \mathbf{\Phi} \tilde{\mathbf{p}}$$
(4.117)

with  $\tilde{\mathbf{p}} = \hat{\mathbf{p}} - \mathbf{p}$  and the identity matrix  $\mathbf{E}$ . Since the matrices  $\mathbf{K}_0$  and  $\mathbf{K}_1$  were chosen in such a way that the error system is asymptotically stable, the matrix  $\mathbf{A}$  is a Hurwitz matrix, and according to Theorem 3.7, for every positive definite matrix  $\bar{\mathbf{Q}}$ , there exists a unique positive definite solution  $\mathbf{P}$  of the Lyapunov equation

$$\mathbf{A}^{\mathrm{T}}\mathbf{P} + \mathbf{P}\mathbf{A} + \bar{\mathbf{Q}} = \mathbf{0} . \qquad (4.118)$$

To develop an adaptation law for the estimated value  $\hat{\mathbf{p}}$  of the parameter  $\mathbf{p},$  a Lyapunov function of the form

$$V(\mathbf{e}_{q}, \dot{\mathbf{e}}_{q}, \tilde{\mathbf{p}}) = \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{e}_{q}^{\mathrm{T}} & \dot{\mathbf{e}}_{q}^{\mathrm{T}} \end{bmatrix} \mathbf{P} \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{e}_{q} \\ \dot{\mathbf{e}}_{q} \end{bmatrix} + \tilde{\mathbf{p}}^{\mathrm{T}} \mathbf{\Gamma} \tilde{\mathbf{p}}$$
(4.119)

is assumed with a symmetric, positive definite matrix  $\Gamma$ , and its time derivative along a solution is calculated

$$\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t}V = -\begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{e}_q^{\mathrm{T}} & \dot{\mathbf{e}}_q^{\mathrm{T}}\end{bmatrix} \mathbf{\bar{Q}} \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{e}_q \\ \dot{\mathbf{e}}_q \end{bmatrix} + 2\mathbf{\tilde{p}}^{\mathrm{T}} \left( \mathbf{\Phi}^{\mathrm{T}} \mathbf{B}^{\mathrm{T}} \mathbf{P} \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{e}_q \\ \dot{\mathbf{e}}_q \end{bmatrix} + \mathbf{\Gamma} \frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t} \mathbf{\tilde{p}} \right) .$$
(4.120)

Assuming that the parameter vector  $\mathbf{p}$  is constant (or changes sufficiently slowly compared to the system dynamics in practice) yields the adaptation law

$$\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t}\tilde{\mathbf{p}} = \frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t}\hat{\mathbf{p}} = -\mathbf{\Gamma}^{-1}\mathbf{\Phi}^{\mathrm{T}}\mathbf{B}^{\mathrm{T}}\mathbf{P}\begin{bmatrix}\mathbf{e}_{q}\\\dot{\mathbf{e}}_{q}\end{bmatrix},\qquad(4.121)$$

which results in (4.120) becoming

$$\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t}V = -\begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{e}_q^{\mathrm{T}} & \dot{\mathbf{e}}_q^{\mathrm{T}} \end{bmatrix} \bar{\mathbf{Q}} \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{e}_q \\ \dot{\mathbf{e}}_q \end{bmatrix} \le 0 \ . \tag{4.122}$$

This immediately demonstrates the stability of the equilibrium of the error system  $\mathbf{e}_{q,R} = \dot{\mathbf{e}}_{q,R} = \mathbf{0}.$ 

To prove asymptotic stability, Barbalat's Lemma is used (see Theorem 3.14). From the fact that  $V(\mathbf{e}_q, \dot{\mathbf{e}}_q, \tilde{\mathbf{p}})$  from (4.119) is positive definite and  $\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t}V$  from (4.122) is negative semidefinite, the boundedness of  $\mathbf{e}_q$ ,  $\dot{\mathbf{e}}_q$ , and  $\tilde{\mathbf{p}}$  directly follows. Assuming that the matrix  $\hat{\mathbf{D}}(\mathbf{q})$  remains positive definite and invertible through parameter estimation guarantees that the entries of  $\boldsymbol{\Phi}$  in (4.116) are also bounded. From (4.116) and (4.121), it can then be immediately seen that  $\ddot{\mathbf{e}}_q$  and  $\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t}\tilde{\mathbf{p}}$  are bounded. This implies that  $\frac{\mathrm{d}^2}{\mathrm{d}t^2}V$  is bounded,

Lecture Nonlinear Dynamical Systems and Control (SS 2025) ©A. Deutschmann-Olek and A. Kugi, Institut für Automatisierungs- und Regelungstechnik, TU Wien

and consequently, according to Theorem 3.13,  $\frac{d}{dt}V$  is uniformly continuous. This allows the application of Barbalat's Lemma, resulting in

$$\lim_{t \to \infty} \frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t} V = 0 \tag{4.123a}$$

or

$$\lim_{t \to \infty} \mathbf{e}_q = \lim_{t \to \infty} \dot{\mathbf{e}}_q = \mathbf{0} . \tag{4.123b}$$

One disadvantage of this method is that to calculate **Y** from (4.113) or  $\boldsymbol{\Phi}$  from (4.116), either the acceleration  $\ddot{\mathbf{q}}$  must be measured or approximated by differentiating the velocity  $\dot{\mathbf{q}}$ . In practice,  $\ddot{\mathbf{q}}$  is often simply replaced by  $\ddot{\mathbf{q}}_d$ .

*Exercise* 4.11. Design a controller using the Computed-Torque method with parameter adaptation according to (4.114) and (4.121) for the mechanical systems in exercises 1.6 and 1.7. Choose a deviation of +15% from the nominal parameters and simulate the closed-loop systems in MATLAB/SIMULINK. Compare the results with those from exercise 4.10 where the actual parameters deviate by +15% from the nominal values.

*Exercise* 4.12. Design a trajectory tracking controller using the Computed-Torque method for the three-degree-of-freedom robot shown in Figure 4.2 and perform an adaptation for the end mass  $m_{\text{Last}}$  according to (4.121). Simulate the closed-loop system in MATLAB/SIMULINK for an end mass  $m_{\text{Last}} = 20$  kg. Note that for the nominal value of the end mass,  $\hat{m}_{\text{Last}} = 1$  kg.

*Exercise* 4.13. Show that the controller according to Slotine and Li

$$\boldsymbol{\tau} = \mathbf{D}(\mathbf{q})\dot{\mathbf{v}} + \mathbf{C}(\mathbf{q}, \dot{\mathbf{q}})\mathbf{v} + \mathbf{g}(\mathbf{q}) - \mathbf{K}_D(\dot{\mathbf{q}} - \mathbf{v}), \quad \mathbf{v} = \dot{\mathbf{q}}_d - \boldsymbol{\Lambda}(\mathbf{q} - \mathbf{q}_d)$$
(4.124)

leads to an asymptotically stable error system for  $\mathbf{e}_q = \mathbf{q} - \mathbf{q}_d$  with a positive definite diagonal matrix  $\mathbf{\Lambda}$ .

Tip: Introduce the generalized control error

$$\mathbf{s} = \dot{\mathbf{e}}_q + \mathbf{\Lambda} \mathbf{e}_q \tag{4.125}$$

as an auxiliary quantity and consider the Lyapunov function

$$V = \frac{1}{2} \mathbf{s}^{\mathrm{T}} \mathbf{D}(\mathbf{q}) \mathbf{s}$$
 (4.126)

#### 4.6 Literatur

- [4.1] H. K. Khalil, Nonlinear Systems (3rd Edition). New Jersey: Prentice Hall, 2002.
- [4.2] M. Krstić, I. Kanellakopoulos, and P. Kokotović, Nonlinear and Adaptive Control Design. New York: John Wiley & Sons, 1995.
- [4.3] E. Slotine and W. Li, Applied Nonlinear Control. New Jersey: Prentice Hall, 1991.
- [4.4] E. D. Sontag, Mathematical Control Theory (2nd Edition). New York: Springer, 1998.
- [4.5] M. W. Spong, Robot Dynamics and Control. New York: John Wiley & Sons, 1989.
- [4.6] M. Vidyasagar, Nonlinear Systems Analysis. New Jersey: Prentice Hall, 1993.

# 5 Singular Perturbation Theory

There are many (nonlinear) dynamic systems that consist of a *slow* and a *fast subsystem*. In this chapter, such systems will be analyzed in more detail, and it will be clarified under which conditions the fast subsystem can be approximated by its corresponding *quasi-stationary solution*.

#### 5.1 Basic Idea

In state-space representation, a system consisting of a fast and a slow subsystem can be described in the form

$$\dot{\mathbf{x}} = \mathbf{f}_1(t, \mathbf{x}, \mathbf{z}, \varepsilon) \tag{5.1a}$$

$$\varepsilon \dot{\mathbf{z}} = \mathbf{f}_2(t, \mathbf{x}, \mathbf{z}, \varepsilon)$$
 (5.1b)

with the small positive perturbation parameter  $\varepsilon \in [0, \varepsilon_0]$ , time  $t \in [t_0, t_1]$ , and state  $\mathbf{x} \in \mathcal{D}_x \subset \mathbb{R}^n$  and  $\mathbf{z} \in \mathcal{D}_z \subset \mathbb{R}^m$ . Furthermore, it is assumed that  $\mathbf{f}_1$  and  $\mathbf{f}_2$  are continuously differentiable with respect to all arguments  $(t, \mathbf{x}, \mathbf{z}, \varepsilon)$ . Now, if we set  $\varepsilon = 0$  in (5.1), the differential equation system (5.1b) degenerates into a system of algebraic equations of the form

$$\mathbf{0} = \mathbf{f}_2(t, \mathbf{x}_r, \mathbf{z}_r, \mathbf{0}) \ . \tag{5.2}$$

Assuming that the nonlinear equation system (5.2) has  $k \ge 1$  isolated real roots of the form

$$\mathbf{z}_r = \mathbf{q}(t, \mathbf{x}_r) \tag{5.3}$$

for each  $(t, \mathbf{x}_r) \in [0, t_1] \times \mathcal{D}_x$ , a well-defined *n*-dimensional reduced mathematical model of the form

$$\dot{\mathbf{x}}_r = \mathbf{f}_1(t, \mathbf{x}_r, \mathbf{q}(t, \mathbf{x}_r), 0) \tag{5.4}$$

can be computed for each root. In this case, it is said that (5.1) is in the standard form of singular perturbation theory, and (5.4) represents the corresponding quasi-stationary model.

The following examples illustrate how a singularly perturbed state-space representation according to (5.1) can arise during the modeling of dynamic systems and how the singular perturbation parameter  $\varepsilon$  comes into play.

Lecture Nonlinear Dynamical Systems and Control (SS 2025) ©A. Deutschmann-Olek and A. Kugi, Institut für Automatisierungs- und Regelungstechnik, TU Wien
*Example* 5.1 (Direct Current Machine). Assuming a constant excitation ( $\psi_F$  constant), the mathematical model of a direct current machine can be written as follows according to (1.38) with  $k_A = k\psi_F$ :

$$\Theta_G \frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t} \omega = k_A i_A - M_L \tag{5.5a}$$

$$L_A \frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t} i_A = u_A - R_A i_A - k_A \omega \tag{5.5b}$$

Assuming that the armature inductance  $L_A$  is very small,  $L_A$  can be directly used as a singular perturbation parameter  $\varepsilon$ , and the system (5.4) is already in the standard form of singular perturbation theory according to (5.1) with  $x = \omega$  and  $z = i_A$ . Setting  $\varepsilon = L_A = 0$  in (5.5), we obtain from (5.5b) for  $R_A \neq 0$  the (unique) isolated root

$$i_A = \frac{u_A - k_A \omega}{R_A} \tag{5.6}$$

and thus the quasi-stationary model

$$\Theta_G \frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t} \omega = -\frac{k_A^2}{R_A} \omega + \frac{k_A}{R_A} u_A - M_L \;. \tag{5.7}$$

One drawback of this approach is that the singular perturbation parameter  $\varepsilon = L_A$  is a dimensioned quantity, and therefore, based solely on the value of  $L_A$ , it cannot be concluded that (5.5b) represents a fast subsystem. For this reason, a normalization according to (1.39) is introduced in the form

$$\tilde{\omega} = \frac{\omega}{\omega_0}, \quad \tilde{u}_A = \frac{u_A}{k_A\omega_0}, \quad \tilde{i}_A = \frac{i_A R_A}{k_A\omega_0} \quad \text{und} \quad \tilde{M}_L = \frac{M_L R_A}{k_A^2\omega_0}$$
(5.8)

with the nominal angular velocity  $\omega_0$ , and (5.5) follows in normalized representation as

$$T_M \frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t} \tilde{\omega} = \tilde{i}_A - \tilde{M}_L \tag{5.9a}$$

$$T_A \frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t} \tilde{i}_A = \tilde{u}_A - \tilde{i}_A - \tilde{\omega}$$
(5.9b)

with the electrical and mechanical time constants

$$T_A = \frac{L_A}{R_A}$$
 und  $T_M = \frac{R_A \Theta_G}{k_A^2}$ . (5.10)

Finally, with the normalized time  $\tilde{t} = t/T_M$ , (5.9) results in the standard form of singular perturbation theory

$$\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}\tilde{t}}\tilde{\omega} = \tilde{i}_A - \tilde{M}_L \tag{5.11a}$$

$$\frac{T_A}{T_M} \frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}\tilde{t}} \tilde{i}_A = \tilde{u}_A - \tilde{i}_A - \tilde{\omega}$$
(5.11b)

with the dimensionless singular perturbation parameter

$$\varepsilon = \frac{T_A}{T_M} = \frac{L_A k_A^2}{\Theta_G R_A^2} \ll 1 , \qquad (5.12)$$

since the electrical time constant  $T_A$  is much smaller than the mechanical time constant  $T_M$ . Figure 5.1 shows simulation results of the full and reduced models for  $T_A = 10$  ms,  $T_M = 200$  ms,  $\tilde{u}_A = 1$ , the load torque profile  $\tilde{M}_L(\tilde{t}) = 1/2(\sigma(\tilde{t}-1) - \sigma(\tilde{t}-2))$  with the unit step function  $\sigma(\cdot)$ , and initial values  $\tilde{i}_A = 0$  and  $\tilde{\omega} = 0$ .



Figure 5.1: Simulation results of the full and reduced models of the direct current machine.

*Example* 5.2 (Cascaded Control Loop). The cascaded control loop given in Figure 5.2.



Figure 5.2: Cascaded control loop.

In the inner control loop, an actuator is controlled by a high-gain controller. The open loop of the actuator is modeled as a Hammerstein model with a static input nonlinearity  $\psi(e)$  (in this case,  $\psi(0) = 0$ ,  $e\psi(e) > 0$  for all  $e \neq 0$ ) and a linear dynamics (in this case, an integrator with transfer function  $G(s) = k_{P1}/s$  with a very large gain factor  $k_{P1} > 0$ ). The controlled actuator acts on a linear time-invariant single-input system

$$\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t}\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{A}\mathbf{x} + \mathbf{b}u \tag{5.13a}$$

$$y = \mathbf{c}^{\mathrm{T}} \mathbf{x} \tag{5.13b}$$

with state  $\mathbf{x} \in \mathbb{R}^n$ , input  $u \in \mathbb{R}$ , and output  $y \in \mathbb{R}$ , which is controlled in an outer control loop by a P-controller with gain factor  $k_{P2}$ . The state-space representation of the closed loop is thus

$$\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t}\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{A}\mathbf{x} + \mathbf{b}u \tag{5.14a}$$

$$\frac{1}{k_{P1}}\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t}u = \psi\left(k_{P2}\left(r - \mathbf{c}^{\mathrm{T}}\mathbf{x}\right) - u\right).$$
(5.14b)

It is immediately apparent that for  $k_{P1} \gg 1$ , the quantity  $\varepsilon = 1/k_{P1} \ll 1$  represents a suitable singular perturbation parameter, and the system (5.14) is in the standard form of singular perturbation theory (5.1). The reduced model for  $\varepsilon = 0$  or  $k_{P1} \rightarrow \infty$ is directly obtained as

$$\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t}\mathbf{x} = \left(\mathbf{A} - k_{P2}\mathbf{b}\mathbf{c}^{\mathrm{T}}\right)\mathbf{x} + k_{P2}\mathbf{b}r , \qquad (5.15)$$

corresponding to the block diagram in Figure 5.3.



Figure 5.3: Block diagram of the linear system (5.14b).

In the context of singular perturbation theory, the inner control loop is considered as

a pass-through, essentially reflecting the basic idea of cascaded control.

*Example* 5.3 (Electrical Network). Consider the nonlinear electrical network shown in Figure 5.4 with voltage-controlled nonlinear resistors  $i = \psi(u)$ , linear resistors R and  $R_C$ , voltage sources U, and linear capacitors C.



Figure 5.4: Electrical network.

The mathematical model for this is

$$C\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t}u_1 = \frac{1}{R}(U - u_1) - \psi(u_1) - \frac{1}{R_C}(u_1 - u_2)$$
(5.16a)

$$C\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t}u_2 = \frac{1}{R}(U-u_2) - \psi(u_2) + \frac{1}{R_C}(u_1-u_2) . \qquad (5.16\mathrm{b})$$

Now, assuming that the resistance  $R_C \ll 1$ , then (5.16) can be written in the form

$$\varepsilon \frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t} u_1 = \frac{\varepsilon}{CR} (U - u_1) - \frac{\varepsilon}{C} \psi(u_1) - \frac{1}{C} (u_1 - u_2)$$
(5.17a)

$$\varepsilon \frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t} u_2 = \frac{\varepsilon}{CR} (U - u_2) - \frac{\varepsilon}{C} \psi(u_2) + \frac{1}{C} (u_1 - u_2) . \qquad (5.17b)$$

with the singular perturbation parameter  $\varepsilon = R_C$ . Obviously, (5.17) does not have isolated roots for  $\varepsilon = 0$ , because  $u_1 - u_2 = 0$ , which is why the system (5.17) is not in the standard form of singular perturbation theory (5.1). Performing the regular state transformation

$$x = \frac{1}{2}(u_1 + u_2)$$
 und  $z = \frac{1}{2}(u_1 - u_2)$  (5.18)

leads to the standard form of singular perturbation theory from (5.16) to

$$\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t}x = \frac{1}{CR}(U-x) - \frac{1}{2C}(\psi(x+z) + \psi(x-z))$$
(5.19a)

$$\varepsilon \frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t} z = -\frac{\varepsilon}{CR} z - \frac{\varepsilon}{2C} (\psi(x+z) - \psi(x-z)) - \frac{2}{C} z \qquad (5.19b)$$

with the quasi-stationary model ( $\varepsilon = 0$  implies the unique isolated root z = 0)

$$\frac{d}{dt}x = \frac{1}{CR}(U-x) - \frac{1}{C}\psi(x) .$$
 (5.20)

Lecture Nonlinear Dynamical Systems and Control (SS 2025) @A. Deutschmann-Olek and A. Kugi, Institut für Automatisierungs- und Regelungstechnik, TU Wien

*Exercise* 5.1. Draw the equivalent circuit diagram for the quasi-stationary model (5.20). Scale the quantities appropriately so that the singular perturbation parameter  $\varepsilon$  becomes dimensionless.

# 5.2 Different Time Scales

In the following, the order of approximation  $\mathcal{O}(\cdot)$  is needed, which is defined as follows:

**Definition 5.1** (Order of Approximation). We write  $\delta_1(\varepsilon) = \mathcal{O}(\delta_2(\varepsilon))$  if positive constants  $c_1$  and  $c_2$  exist such that

$$|\delta_1(\varepsilon)| \le c_1 |\delta_2(\varepsilon)| \quad \text{for alle } |\varepsilon| < c_2 \tag{5.21}$$

holds.

To illustrate the definition, some examples are given below:

- $\varepsilon^n = \mathcal{O}(\varepsilon^m)$  for all  $n \ge m$ , since  $|\varepsilon|^n = |\varepsilon|^m |\varepsilon|^{n-m} \le |\varepsilon|^m$  for all  $|\varepsilon| < 1$
- $1 + 5\varepsilon = \mathcal{O}(1)$ , since  $|1 + 5\varepsilon| \le |1 + 5c_2|$  for all  $|\varepsilon| < c_2$

• 
$$\varepsilon^2/(1+\varepsilon) = \mathcal{O}(\varepsilon^2)$$
, since  $\left|\frac{\varepsilon^2}{1+\varepsilon}\right| \le \frac{1}{1-c_2}|\varepsilon^2|$  for all  $|\varepsilon| < c_2 < 1$ 

Suppose  $\mathbf{x}(t;\varepsilon)$  and  $\mathbf{z}(t;\varepsilon)$  denote the solution trajectory of the system (see (5.1))

$$\dot{\mathbf{x}} = \mathbf{f}_1(t, \mathbf{x}, \mathbf{z}, \varepsilon), \qquad \mathbf{x}(t_0; \varepsilon) = \mathbf{x}_0(\varepsilon) \qquad (5.22a)$$

$$\varepsilon \dot{\mathbf{z}} = \mathbf{f}_2(t, \mathbf{x}, \mathbf{z}, \varepsilon), \qquad \mathbf{z}(t_0; \varepsilon) = \mathbf{z}_0(\varepsilon) , \qquad (5.22b)$$

where  $\mathbf{x}_0(\varepsilon)$  and  $\mathbf{z}_0(\varepsilon)$  are smooth functions of  $\varepsilon$ . For the corresponding dimension-reduced quasi-stationary model (see (5.4))

$$\dot{\mathbf{x}}_r = \mathbf{f}_1(t, \mathbf{x}_r, \mathbf{q}(t, \mathbf{x}_r), 0), \qquad \mathbf{x}_r(t_0) = \mathbf{x}_0(0) \tag{5.23}$$

only *n* initial conditions can be specified, as the values of  $\mathbf{z}_r(t_0) = \mathbf{z}_{r0} = \mathbf{q}(t, \mathbf{x}_0(0))$  are fixed at time  $t = t_0$  through the relationship  $\mathbf{z}_r(t) = \mathbf{q}(t, \mathbf{x}_r(t))$  (see (5.3)). Note that there may be a *significant difference* between the initial value  $\mathbf{z}_0(\varepsilon)$  of the full model (5.22) and the initial value  $\mathbf{z}_{r0}$  of the quasi-stationary system. Regarding the accuracy of the quasi-stationary model, one can expect at most for a time interval  $t \in [t_s, t_1]$  with  $t_s > t_0$ that

$$\mathbf{z}(t;\varepsilon) - \mathbf{z}_r(t) = \mathcal{O}(\varepsilon)$$
 (5.24)

For the state **x** of the slow subsystem, due to the consistent initial condition, one can indeed expect the approximation order to hold for the entire time interval  $t \in [t_0, t_1]$ 

$$\mathbf{x}(t;\varepsilon) - \mathbf{x}_r(t) = \mathcal{O}(\varepsilon) , \qquad (5.25)$$

since

$$\mathbf{x}(t_0;\varepsilon) - \mathbf{x}_r(t_0) = \mathbf{x}_0(\varepsilon) - \mathbf{x}_0(0) = \mathcal{O}(\varepsilon) .$$
(5.26)

If the approximation order  $\mathbf{z}(t;\varepsilon) - \mathbf{z}_r(t) = \mathcal{O}(\varepsilon)$  holds in the time interval  $t \in [t_s, t_1]$ with  $t_s > t_0$ , then obviously the initial error  $\mathbf{z}(t_0;\varepsilon) - \mathbf{z}_r(t_0) = \mathbf{z}_0(\varepsilon) - \mathbf{z}_{r0}$  must decay accordingly in the time interval  $t \in [t_0, t_s]$ . This time interval  $[t_0, t_s]$  is also referred to as the boundary layer in the context of singular perturbation theory. It should be mentioned at this point that in the limit  $\varepsilon = 0$ , the fast subsystem (5.22b) with  $\dot{\mathbf{z}} = \mathbf{f}_2/\varepsilon$  for  $\mathbf{f}_2 \neq 0$ instantaneously converges to the quasi-stationary model, and for sufficiently small  $\varepsilon \ll 1$ , it is also expected that within the boundary layer interval, the initial error  $\mathbf{z}_0(\varepsilon) - \mathbf{z}_{r0}$ decays in such a way that the approximation order  $\mathbf{z}(t;\varepsilon) - \mathbf{z}_r(t) = \mathcal{O}(\varepsilon)$  holds in the time interval  $t \in [t_s, t_1]$  with  $t_s > t_0$ .

By using the state transformation

$$\mathbf{y} = \mathbf{z} - \mathbf{q}(t, \mathbf{x}) \tag{5.27}$$

with  $\mathbf{q}(t, \mathbf{x})$  according to (5.3), the quasi-stationary solution of  $\mathbf{z}$  is transformed to the origin, and the system (5.22) in the new state  $(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{y})$  is given by

$$\dot{\mathbf{x}} = \mathbf{f}_1(t, \mathbf{x}, \mathbf{y} + \mathbf{q}(t, \mathbf{x}), \varepsilon)$$
(5.28a)

$$\varepsilon \dot{\mathbf{y}} = \mathbf{f}_2(t, \mathbf{x}, \mathbf{y} + \mathbf{q}(t, \mathbf{x}), \varepsilon) - \varepsilon \frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t} \mathbf{q}(t, \mathbf{x})$$
(5.28b)

with initial values  $\mathbf{x}(t_0; \varepsilon) = \mathbf{x}_0(\varepsilon)$  and  $\mathbf{y}(t_0; \varepsilon) = \mathbf{z}_0(\varepsilon) - \mathbf{q}(t_0, \mathbf{x}_0(\varepsilon))$ . If we now perform a time transformation of the form

$$\tau = \frac{t - t_0}{\varepsilon} \quad \text{und damit} \quad \varepsilon \frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t} \mathbf{y} = \frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}\tau} \mathbf{y} \tag{5.29}$$

we see that for  $\varepsilon = 0$ , the new time  $\tau$  tends to infinity, for any time t that is sufficiently greater than  $t_0$ . This means that the quantities t and **x** change very slowly in the time scale  $\tau$ , and in the limit  $\varepsilon = 0$ , they are kept constant at  $t = t_0$  and  $\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{x}_0(0)$ . Therefore, the fast subsystem (5.28b) in the time scale  $\tau$  for  $\varepsilon = 0$  reads

$$\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}\tau}\mathbf{y}_s = \mathbf{f}_2(t_0, \mathbf{x}_0(0), \mathbf{y}_s + \mathbf{q}(t_0, \mathbf{x}_0(0)), 0) , \quad \mathbf{y}_s(0) = \mathbf{z}_0(0) - \mathbf{q}(t_0, \mathbf{x}_0(0)) .$$
(5.30)

If the equilibrium  $\mathbf{y}_s = \mathbf{0}$  of (5.30) is asymptotically stable and  $\mathbf{y}_s(0)$  belongs to the basin of attraction, then one can expect that the initial error  $\mathbf{y}_s(0)$  decays within the boundary layer interval. Outside the boundary layer interval, it must be ensured that  $\mathbf{y}_s(\tau)$  remains close to zero while the quantities  $\mathbf{x}$  and t are allowed to move very slowly away from  $\mathbf{x}_0(0)$ and  $t_0$ . Therefore, (5.30) is rewritten in the form

$$\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}\tau}\mathbf{y}_s = \mathbf{f}_2(t, \mathbf{x}, \mathbf{y}_s + \mathbf{q}(t, \mathbf{x}), 0)$$
(5.31)

with the fixed parameters  $(t, \mathbf{x}) \in [t_0, t_1] \times \mathcal{D}_x$ , and (5.31) is referred to as the *boundary* layer model. For the boundary layer model (5.31), uniform exponential stability of the equilibrium  $\mathbf{y}_s = \mathbf{0}$  is now required in the slowly varying parameters t and  $\mathbf{x}$ . For this purpose, the following definition is introduced (compare with Definition 3.12):

Lecture Nonlinear Dynamical Systems and Control (SS 2025) ©A. Deutschmann-Olek and A. Kugi, Institut für Automatisierungs- und Regelungstechnik, TU Wien

**Definition 5.2** (Exponential stability of the boundary layer system). The equilibrium  $\mathbf{y}_s = \mathbf{0}$  of the boundary layer model (5.31) is uniformly exponentially stable in the slowly varying parameters  $(t, \mathbf{x}) \in [t_0, t_1] \times \mathcal{D}_x$  if positive constants  $k_1, k_2$ , and  $k_3$  exist such that

$$\|\mathbf{y}_{s}(\tau)\| \le k_{1} \|\mathbf{y}_{s}(0)\| \exp(-k_{2}\tau) \quad \text{for alle} \quad \|\mathbf{y}_{s}(0)\| \le k_{3} , \quad (t, \mathbf{x}) \in [t_{0}, t_{1}] \times \mathcal{D}_{x}$$
(5.32)

holds for all times  $\tau \geq 0$ .

The verification of exponential stability according to Definition 5.2 can now be done either locally based on linearization, i.e., for all eigenvalues  $\lambda_i$  of the matrix

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial \mathbf{y}_s} \mathbf{f}_2(t, \mathbf{x}, \mathbf{y}_s + \mathbf{q}(t, \mathbf{x}), 0) \tag{5.33}$$

it holds that  $\operatorname{Re}(\lambda_i) \leq -c < 0$  for all  $(t, \mathbf{x}) \in [t_0, t_1] \times \mathcal{D}_x$ , or it can be shown using Lyapunov theory according to Theorem 3.10, i.e., there exists a Lyapunov function  $V(t, \mathbf{x}, \mathbf{y}_s)$  such that

$$\alpha_1 \|\mathbf{y}_s(\tau)\|^{\alpha_4} \le V(t, \mathbf{x}, \mathbf{y}_s) \le \alpha_2 \|\mathbf{y}_s(\tau)\|^{\alpha_4}$$
(5.34)

$$\frac{\partial V}{\partial \mathbf{y}_s} \mathbf{f}_2(t, \mathbf{x}, \mathbf{y}_s + \mathbf{q}(t, \mathbf{x}), 0) \le -\alpha_3 \|\mathbf{y}_s(\tau)\|^{\alpha_4}$$
(5.35)

for all times  $\tau \geq 0$ ,  $(t, \mathbf{x}, \mathbf{y}_s) \in [t_0, t_1] \times \mathcal{D}_x \times \mathcal{D}_y$  with  $\mathcal{D}_y \subset \mathbb{R}^m$  and positive constants  $\alpha_j$ ,  $j = 1, \ldots, 4$ .

The previous results can now be summarized in Tikhonov's theorem. The proof can be found in the literature cited at the end.

**Theorem 5.1** (Tikhonov's Theorem). Consider the singularly perturbed problem (see also (5.22))

$$\dot{\mathbf{x}} = \mathbf{f}_1(t, \mathbf{x}, \mathbf{z}, \varepsilon), \qquad \mathbf{x}(t_0; \varepsilon) = \mathbf{x}_0(\varepsilon)$$

$$\varepsilon \dot{\mathbf{z}} = \mathbf{f}_2(t, \mathbf{x}, \mathbf{z}, \varepsilon), \qquad \mathbf{z}(t_0; \varepsilon) = \mathbf{z}_0(\varepsilon)$$

$$(5.36b)$$

with the isolated root  $\mathbf{z}_r = \mathbf{q}(t, \mathbf{x}_r)$  of (5.36b) for  $\varepsilon = 0$ , see also (5.3). Assume that for all

$$[t, \mathbf{x}, \mathbf{z} - \mathbf{q}(t, \mathbf{x}), \varepsilon] \in [t_0, t_1] \times \mathcal{D}_x \times \mathcal{D}_y \times [0, \varepsilon_0]$$

with  $\mathcal{D}_x \subset \mathbb{R}^n$ ,  $\mathcal{D}_y \subset \mathbb{R}^m$  (furthermore, let  $\mathcal{D}_x$  be convex), the following conditions hold:

A.) The functions  $\mathbf{f}_1$  and  $\mathbf{f}_2$ , whose first partial derivatives with respect to  $(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{z}, \varepsilon)$ and the first partial derivative of  $\mathbf{f}_2$  with respect to t are continuous. Furthermore, the first partial derivatives of  $\mathbf{q}(t, \mathbf{x})$  and  $\frac{\partial}{\partial \mathbf{z}} \mathbf{f}_2(t, \mathbf{x}, \mathbf{z}, 0)$  are also continuous in the arguments, and the initial conditions  $\mathbf{x}_0(\varepsilon)$  and  $\mathbf{z}_0(\varepsilon)$  are smooth functions of  $\varepsilon$ . B.) The dimension-reduced quasi-stationary model (see also (5.4))

$$\dot{\mathbf{x}}_r = \mathbf{f}_1(t, \mathbf{x}_r, \mathbf{q}(t, \mathbf{x}_r), 0) , \quad \mathbf{x}_r(t_0) = \mathbf{x}_0(0)$$
 (5.37)

has a unique solution on a compact subset of  $\mathcal{D}_x$  in the time interval  $[t_0, t_1]$ .

C.) The equilibrium  $\mathbf{y}_s = \mathbf{0}$  of the boundary layer model (see also (5.31))

$$\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}\tau}\mathbf{y}_s = \mathbf{f}_2(t, \mathbf{x}, \mathbf{y}_s + \mathbf{q}(t, \mathbf{x}), 0)$$
(5.38)

is uniformly exponentially stable in the slowly varying parameters t and  $\mathbf{x}$  (see Definition 5.2) with the compact basin of attraction  $\Omega_{y} \subset \mathcal{D}_{y}$ .

Then there exists a positive constant  $\varepsilon^*$  such that for all  $\mathbf{z}_0(0) - \mathbf{q}(t_0, \mathbf{x}_0(0)) = \mathbf{y}_s(0) \in \Omega_y$  and  $0 < \varepsilon < \varepsilon^*$ , the singularly perturbed problem (5.36) has a unique solution  $\mathbf{x}(t;\varepsilon)$  and  $\mathbf{z}(t;\varepsilon)$  in the time interval  $[t_0, t_1]$ , and the approximation

$$\mathbf{x}(t;\varepsilon) - \mathbf{x}_r(t) = \mathcal{O}(\varepsilon) \tag{5.39}$$

$$\mathbf{z}(t;\varepsilon) - \mathbf{q}(t,\mathbf{x}_r(t)) - \mathbf{y}_s\left(\frac{t-t_0}{\varepsilon}\right) = \mathcal{O}(\varepsilon)$$
(5.40)

holds for all  $t \in [t_0, t_1]$ . Moreover, there exists a positive constant  $\varepsilon^{**} \leq \varepsilon^*$  such that

$$\mathbf{z}(t;\varepsilon) - \mathbf{q}(t,\mathbf{x}_r(t)) = \mathcal{O}(\varepsilon)$$
(5.41)

holds for all t in the time interval  $[t_s, t_1], t_s > t_0$ , and all  $\varepsilon < \varepsilon^{**}$ .

The statement of Theorem 5.1 refers to a finite time interval  $[t_0, t_1]$ . If one wishes to extend this to an infinite time interval  $t \in [t_0, \infty)$ , point B.) of Theorem 5.1 must be replaced by the exponential stability of the equilibrium of the quasi-stationary model (5.37) for all  $t \in [t_0, \infty)$ .

*Exercise* 5.2. Given is the singularly perturbed problem

$$\dot{x} = x^2 + z,$$
  $x(0) = x_0$  (5.42a)

$$\varepsilon \dot{z} = x^2 - z + 1,$$
  $z(0) = z_0.$  (5.42b)

The goal is to find an  $\mathcal{O}(\varepsilon)$  approximation of x(t) and z(t) in the time interval  $t \in [0, 1]$ . For  $x_0 = z_0 = 0$ , the approximated model for  $\varepsilon = 0.1$  and  $\varepsilon = 0.05$  should be compared with the original model (5.42) in a simulation in MATLAB/SIMULINK.

**Tip:** For the simulation, consider that the system tends to infinity in finite time (shortly after t = 1 s).

*Exercise* 5.3. Given is the singularly perturbed problem

$$\dot{x} = x + z,$$
  $x(0) = x_0$  (5.43a)

$$\varepsilon \dot{z} = -\frac{2}{\pi} \arctan\left(\frac{\pi}{2}(2x+z)\right), \qquad z(0) = z_0 . \qquad (5.43b)$$

The goal is to find an  $\mathcal{O}(\varepsilon)$  approximation of x(t) and z(t) in the time interval  $t \in [0, 1]$ . For  $x_0 = z_0 = 1$ , the approximated model for  $\varepsilon = 0.1$  and  $\varepsilon = 0.2$  should be compared with the original model (5.43) in a simulation in MATLAB/SIMULINK.

# 5.3 Linear Time-Invariant Systems

Given is the singularly perturbed linear time-invariant system in standard form (5.1)

$$\dot{\mathbf{x}} = \mathbf{A}_{11}\mathbf{x} + \mathbf{A}_{12}\mathbf{z} \tag{5.44a}$$

$$\varepsilon \dot{\mathbf{z}} = \mathbf{A}_{21}\mathbf{x} + \mathbf{A}_{22}\mathbf{z} \tag{5.44b}$$

with matrices  $\mathbf{A}_{11} \in \mathbb{R}^{n \times n}$ ,  $\mathbf{A}_{12} \in \mathbb{R}^{n \times m}$ ,  $\mathbf{A}_{21} \in \mathbb{R}^{m \times n}$  and  $\mathbf{A}_{22} \in \mathbb{R}^{m \times m}$ . Setting  $\varepsilon = 0$  in (5.44b), under the assumption that  $\mathbf{A}_{22}$  is regular, the resulting algebraic equation can be explicitly solved in the form

$$\mathbf{z}_r = -\mathbf{A}_{22}^{-1}\mathbf{A}_{21}\mathbf{x}_r \tag{5.45}$$

Substituting (5.45) into (5.44a) yields the quasi-stationary model as

$$\dot{\mathbf{x}}_r = \left(\mathbf{A}_{11} - \mathbf{A}_{12}\mathbf{A}_{22}^{-1}\mathbf{A}_{21}\right)\mathbf{x}_r \ . \tag{5.46}$$

The boundary layer model (5.31) is calculated using the state transformation  $\mathbf{y} = \mathbf{z} + \mathbf{A}_{22}^{-1}\mathbf{A}_{21}\mathbf{x}$  (see (5.27)) as

$$\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}\tau}\mathbf{y} = \mathbf{A}_{21}\mathbf{x} + \mathbf{A}_{22}\left(\mathbf{y} - \mathbf{A}_{22}^{-1}\mathbf{A}_{21}\mathbf{x}\right) = \mathbf{A}_{22}\mathbf{y} .$$
(5.47)

For linear time-invariant systems, it is immediately clear that according to Theorem 5.1, the matrix  $A_{22}$  must be a Hurwitz matrix (all eigenvalues with real part strictly less than zero). Hence, the following theorem holds (for a proof, refer to the literature cited at the end):

**Theorem 5.2** (On the Eigenvalues of Singularly Perturbed LTI Systems). If  $\mathbf{A}_{22}$  from (5.44) is regular, then the first n eigenvalues of the system (5.44) converge to the eigenvalues of the matrix  $\mathbf{A}_{11} - \mathbf{A}_{12}\mathbf{A}_{22}^{-1}\mathbf{A}_{21}$  as  $\varepsilon \to 0$ , see (5.46). The remaining m eigenvalues approach infinity at a rate of  $1/\varepsilon$  along the asymptotes defined by the eigenvalues of the matrix  $\mathbf{A}_{22}$ , see (5.47).

Theorem 5.2 is also of great importance for the analysis of nonlinear systems. Typically, in a first step, one always linearizes the nonlinear system around one or more operating points and calculates the eigenvalues of the resulting dynamics matrix. If these eigenvalues

Lecture Nonlinear Dynamical Systems and Control (SS 2025) ©A. Deutschmann-Olek and A. Kugi, Institut für Automatisierungs- und Regelungstechnik, TU Wien

are significantly far apart in magnitude, this is a clear indication of different dynamics in the system and is usually a starting point for formulating the mathematical model in the standard form of singular perturbation theory according to (5.1). Consider the nonlinear system of the form

$$\dot{\mathbf{w}} = \mathbf{f}(\mathbf{w}, \mathbf{u}) \tag{5.48}$$

with  $\mathbf{w} \in \mathcal{D}_w \subset \mathbb{R}^{n+m}$  and  $\mathbf{u} \in \mathbb{R}^p$ . The linearization of the system (5.48) around an equilibrium point  $(\mathbf{w}_R, \mathbf{u}_R)$  with  $\mathbf{f}(\mathbf{w}_R, \mathbf{u}_R) = \mathbf{0}$  reads

$$\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t}\Delta\mathbf{w} = \underbrace{\left(\frac{\partial}{\partial\mathbf{w}}\mathbf{f}\right)\Big|_{\substack{\mathbf{w}=\mathbf{w}_R\\\mathbf{u}=\mathbf{u}_R}}}_{\mathbf{A}}\Delta\mathbf{w} + \underbrace{\left(\frac{\partial}{\partial\mathbf{u}}\mathbf{f}\right)\Big|_{\substack{\mathbf{w}=\mathbf{w}_R\\\mathbf{u}=\mathbf{u}_R}}}_{\mathbf{B}}\Delta\mathbf{u} \ . \tag{5.49}$$

The eigenvalues of the dynamics matrix **A** characterize the dynamics of the system in the vicinity of the equilibrium point  $(\mathbf{w}_R, \mathbf{u}_R)$ . Assuming that these eigenvalues can be clustered into *n* slow and *m* fast eigenvalues (typically, the time constants differ by a factor of 10 or more) and  $\mathbf{v}_1, \ldots, \mathbf{v}_n$  and  $\mathbf{v}_{n+1}, \ldots, \mathbf{v}_{n+m}$  denote the corresponding eigen- and principal vectors or real and imaginary parts of the complex-valued eigen- and principal vectors for the transformation to real Jordan normal form. The real Jordan normal form of the linearized system (5.49) is obtained directly using the regular state transformation

$$\Delta \mathbf{w} = \underbrace{\left[\mathbf{v}_{1}, \dots, \mathbf{v}_{n}, \mathbf{v}_{n+1}, \dots, \mathbf{v}_{n+m}\right]}_{\mathbf{V}} \Delta \bar{\mathbf{w}}$$
(5.50)

resulting in

$$\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t}\Delta\bar{\mathbf{w}} = \underbrace{\mathbf{V}^{-1}\mathbf{A}\mathbf{V}}_{\bar{\mathbf{A}}}\Delta\bar{\mathbf{w}} + \underbrace{\mathbf{V}^{-1}\mathbf{B}}_{\bar{\mathbf{B}}}\Delta\mathbf{u}$$
(5.51)

or with 
$$\Delta \bar{\mathbf{w}}^{\mathrm{T}} = \begin{bmatrix} \Delta \mathbf{x}^{\mathrm{T}}, \Delta \mathbf{z}^{\mathrm{T}} \end{bmatrix}$$
  
$$\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t} \begin{bmatrix} \Delta \mathbf{x} \\ \Delta \mathbf{z} \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} \bar{\mathbf{A}}_{11} & \mathbf{0} \\ \mathbf{0} & \bar{\mathbf{A}}_{22} \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} \Delta \mathbf{x} \\ \Delta \mathbf{z} \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} \bar{\mathbf{B}}_{1} \\ \bar{\mathbf{B}}_{2} \end{bmatrix} \Delta \mathbf{u} .$$
(5.52)

Here, the state  $\Delta \mathbf{x} \in \mathcal{D}_x \subset \mathbb{R}^n$  describes the slow part and  $\Delta \mathbf{z} \in \mathcal{D}_z \subset \mathbb{R}^m$  the fast part of (5.52). Through the regular state transformation (5.50), the slow and fast states can be directly assigned to the original state variables  $\Delta \mathbf{w}$  in the form

$$\begin{bmatrix} \Delta \mathbf{x} \\ \Delta \mathbf{z} \end{bmatrix} = \mathbf{V}^{-1} \Delta \mathbf{w} \tag{5.53}$$

This approach can be carried out for different equilibrium points  $(\mathbf{w}_R, \mathbf{u}_R)$  and is also very helpful in the analysis of the nonlinear system (5.48). In this way, one obtains an indication of which states or combinations of states form the fast subsystem of (5.48). This procedure, combined with domain-specific knowledge of the system model, usually allows for formulating the system (5.48) in the standard form of singular perturbation theory (5.1). For the resulting quasi-stationary model (5.4), it must always hold that the *m* fast eigenvalues are no longer present in the linearization around the respective equilibrium point.

Lecture Nonlinear Dynamical Systems and Control (SS 2025) ©A. Deutschmann-Olek and A. Kugi, Institut für Automatisierungs- und Regelungstechnik, TU Wien

*Exercise* 5.4. Calculate the first-order quasi-stationary model for the nonlinear system

$$\begin{split} \dot{x}_1 &= -41x_3^3 - x_1^3 + 8x_1x_2x_3 - 7x_2^2x_3 - 30x_2x_3^2 + 3x_1^2x_2 - 4x_1^2x_3 - 3x_1x_2^2 + 27x_1x_3^2 \\ &- 680x_3 - 290x_2 + 290x_1 + \frac{1}{2}u \\ \dot{x}_2 &= 7x_2^2x_3 - x_2^3 + 37x_2x_3^2 + 49x_3^3 + 100x_1 - 100x_2 - 200x_3 + 10x_1^2x_3 - 20x_1x_2x_3 \\ &- 40x_1x_3^2 + \frac{1}{2}u \\ \dot{x}_3 &= -10x_1^2x_3 + 20x_1x_2x_3 + 40x_1x_3^2 - 10x_2^2x_3 - 40x_2x_3^2 - 50x_3^3 + 100x_1 - 100x_2 \\ &- 200x_3 \end{split}$$

and verify the result through simulation in MATLAB.

*Example* 5.4 (Spring-mass-damper system). Given is the mathematical model of a linear spring-mass-damper system with the spring stiffness c, damping constant d, mass m, and external force F in the form

$$\begin{bmatrix} \dot{x} \\ \dot{v} \end{bmatrix} = \underbrace{\begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ -\frac{c}{m} & -\frac{d}{m} \end{bmatrix}}_{\mathbf{A}} \begin{bmatrix} x \\ v \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ \frac{1}{m} \end{bmatrix} F .$$
(5.54)

The eigenvalues of the dynamics matrix **A** are calculated as

$$\lambda_{1,2} = -\frac{d}{2m} \pm \sqrt{\left(\frac{d}{2m}\right)^2 - \frac{c}{m}} . \tag{5.55}$$

Under the condition  $d < 2\sqrt{mc}$  there exists a complex conjugate pair of eigenvalues, for  $d = 2\sqrt{mc}$  we have  $\lambda_1 = \lambda_2$ , and for  $d > 2\sqrt{mc}$  we obtain two real eigenvalues. If the damping  $d \gg 2\sqrt{mc}$  and tends to infinity in the limit, then eigenvalue  $\lambda_1$ approaches zero and  $\lambda_2$  approaches  $-\frac{d}{m}$ . Thus, the system contains slow and fast dynamics. Choosing  $\varepsilon = \frac{m}{d}$ , equation (5.54) can be written in the standard form of singular perturbation theory as follows

$$\dot{x} = v \tag{5.56}$$

$$\varepsilon \dot{v} = -\frac{c}{d}x - v + \frac{1}{d}F \tag{5.57}$$

and the quasi-stationary model is

$$\dot{x}_r = -\frac{c}{d}x_r + \frac{1}{d}F \ . \tag{5.58}$$

Under certain conditions, the behavior of a second-order system can be approximated very well by a first-order system.

Exercise 5.5. Given is the transfer function of a second-order system

$$G(s) = \frac{V}{1 + 2\xi(sT) + (sT)^2}$$

Under what conditions and in what form can the system be approximated by a firstorder system? Construct an example and compare the step responses in MATLAB.

*Example* 5.5 (Suspension system). Figure 5.5 shows the schematic representation of a quarter-car model with the wheel mass  $m_u$ , wheel stiffness  $k_t$ , sprung mass  $m_s$ , suspension spring and damper constants  $k_s$  and  $d_s$ , and the actuator force F due to an active or semi-active suspension system.



Figure 5.5: Quarter-car model.

Using conservation of momentum, the two differential equations are obtained as

$$m_s \ddot{x}_s = F - k_s (x_s - x_u) - d_s (\dot{x}_s - \dot{x}_u)$$
(5.59)

$$m_u \ddot{x}_u = -F + k_s (x_s - x_u) + d_s (\dot{x}_s - \dot{x}_u) + k_t (x_r - x_u) , \qquad (5.60)$$

where  $x_r(t)$  denotes the excitation caused by road variations. In state-space representation, a linear time-invariant dynamic system of 4th order is obtained in the form

$$\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t} \begin{bmatrix} x_s \\ v_s \\ x_u \\ v_u \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ -\frac{k_s}{m_s} & -\frac{d_s}{m_s} & \frac{k_s}{m_s} & \frac{d_s}{m_s} \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \\ \frac{k_s}{m_u} & \frac{d_s}{m_u} & -\frac{k_s+k_t}{m_u} & -\frac{d_s}{m_u} \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} x_s \\ v_s \\ x_u \\ v_u \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ \frac{1}{m_s} \\ 0 \\ -\frac{1}{m_u} \end{bmatrix} F + \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ \frac{k_t}{m_u} \end{bmatrix} x_r \qquad (5.61)$$

with input variables F and  $x_r$ . Considering the two subsystems, wheel and body mass, separately, the corresponding natural frequencies are  $\sqrt{\frac{k_t}{m_u}}$  and  $\sqrt{\frac{k_s}{m_s}}$ .

For typical vehicles, the natural frequency of the wheel  $\sqrt{\frac{k_t}{m_u}}$  is about an order of magnitude (i.e., a factor of 10) higher than the natural frequency  $\sqrt{\frac{k_s}{m_s}}$  of the body. This suggests that (5.61) contains a fast and a slow subsystem, and the ratio of the two natural frequencies

$$\varepsilon = \frac{\sqrt{\frac{k_s}{m_s}}}{\sqrt{\frac{k_t}{m_u}}} = \sqrt{\frac{k_s m_u}{k_t m_s}} \ll 1$$
(5.62)

represents a suitable singular perturbation parameter. To transform the system (5.61) into the standard form of singular perturbation theory (5.44), a time normalization  $\tau = t \sqrt{\frac{k_s}{m_s}}$  is applied to the slow time constant, and a scaling and transformation of the state variables in the form

$$\tilde{x}_s = x_s \sqrt{\frac{k_s}{m_s}}, \quad \tilde{v}_s = v_s, \quad \tilde{x}_d = (x_u - x_r) \sqrt{\frac{k_t}{m_u}}, \quad \tilde{v}_d = v_u - \dot{x}_r$$
(5.63)

is carried out. It is important to note at this point that the introduction of the relative position  $x_u - x_r$  between the road surface and the wheel is crucial, as this essentially represents the fast dynamics. In contrast, the deflection of the wheel  $x_u$  itself also includes slow components due to the partially slowly varying road excitation

$$\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}\tau} \begin{bmatrix} \tilde{x}_{s} \\ \tilde{v}_{s} \\ \tilde{v}_{s} \\ \tilde{v}_{d} \\ \tilde{v}_{d} \end{bmatrix} = \underbrace{\begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ -1 & -\frac{d_{s}}{\sqrt{m_{s}k_{s}}} & \tilde{c} & \frac{d_{s}}{\sqrt{m_{s}k_{s}}} \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \\ \sqrt{\frac{k_{s}m_{s}}{k_{t}m_{u}}} & \frac{d_{s}}{\sqrt{m_{u}k_{t}}} & -\frac{k_{s}+k_{t}}{k_{t}} & -\frac{d_{s}}{\sqrt{m_{u}k_{t}}} \end{bmatrix}}_{\mathbf{A}(\varepsilon)} \begin{bmatrix} \tilde{x}_{s} \\ \tilde{v}_{d} \\ \tilde{v}_{d} \end{bmatrix} + \underbrace{\begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ -\frac{1}{\sqrt{m_{s}k_{s}}} \\ 0 \\ -\frac{1}{\sqrt{m_{u}k_{t}}} \end{bmatrix}}_{\mathbf{b}} F + \underbrace{\begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ \sqrt{\frac{k_{s}}{m_{s}}} \\ 0 \\ -\frac{k_{s}+k_{t}}{\sqrt{m_{u}k_{t}}} + \sqrt{\frac{k_{t}}{m_{u}}} \end{bmatrix}}_{\mathbf{g}_{1}} x_{r} + \underbrace{\begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \\ \frac{d_{s}}{\sqrt{m_{s}k_{s}}} \\ 0 \\ -\frac{d_{s}}{\sqrt{m_{u}k_{t}}} \end{bmatrix}}_{\mathbf{g}_{2}} \dot{x}_{r} + \underbrace{\begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ -\varepsilon \end{bmatrix}}_{\mathbf{g}_{3}} \dot{x}_{r} .$$
(5.64)

By appropriately factorizing the matrix  $\mathbf{A}(\varepsilon)$  and the vectors  $\mathbf{b}$  and  $\mathbf{g}_j$ ,  $j = 1, \ldots, 3$ , the reduced quasi-stationary model is calculated as (see also Theorem 5.2)

$$\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}\tau} \begin{bmatrix} \tilde{x}_s \\ \tilde{v}_s \end{bmatrix} = \left( \mathbf{A}_{11} - \mathbf{A}_{12}(0) \mathbf{A}_{22}^{-1} \mathbf{A}_{21} \right) \begin{bmatrix} \tilde{x}_s \\ \tilde{v}_s \end{bmatrix} + \left( \mathbf{b}_1 - \mathbf{A}_{12}(0) \mathbf{A}_{22}^{-1} \mathbf{b}_2 \right) F + \\
+ \sum_{j=1}^3 \left( \mathbf{g}_{j1} - \mathbf{A}_{12}(0) \mathbf{A}_{22}^{-1} \mathbf{g}_{j2} \right) x_r^{(j-1)}$$
(5.65)

with the *j*-th time derivative  $x_r^{(j)}(t)$  of  $x_r(t)$ . Thus, we have

$$\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}\tau} \begin{bmatrix} \tilde{x}_s \\ \tilde{v}_s \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ -1 & \frac{-d_s}{\sqrt{m_s k_s}} \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} \tilde{x}_s \\ \tilde{v}_s \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ \frac{1}{\sqrt{m_s k_s}} \end{bmatrix} F + \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ \frac{d_s}{\sqrt{m_s k_s}} \end{bmatrix} \dot{x}_r + \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ \sqrt{\frac{k_s}{m_s}} \end{bmatrix} x_r .$$
(5.66)

In the unnormalized state variables at time t, the reduced quasi-stationary model (5.66) reads

$$m_s \ddot{x}_s = F - k_s (x_s - x_r) - d_s (\dot{x}_s - \dot{x}_r), \qquad (5.67)$$

which corresponds to the schematic representation in Figure 5.6.



Figure 5.6: Reduced quasi-stationary model of a quarter-car.

*Exercise* 5.6. Show the validity of (5.64).

*Exercise* 5.7. Calculate the corresponding quasi-stationary model and the associated boundary layer model for the singularly perturbed linear time-invariant system

$$\frac{d}{dt} \begin{bmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \\ \varepsilon z \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 & 0 \\ -1 & -2 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & -1 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \\ z \end{bmatrix}$$
(5.68)

Investigate the behavior of the eigenvalues as a function of the singular perturbation parameter  $\varepsilon$ .

*Exercise* 5.8. Derive the quasi-stationary model for the mathematical model of the hydraulic actuator (1.50). Take into account that the typical bulk modulus  $\beta_T$  of hydraulic oil is very large.

*Exercise* 5.9. Derive the quasi-stationary model for the mathematical model of the separately excited DC motor (1.38) assuming that the time constant of the armature circuit is significantly smaller than the time constant of the field circuit and the mechanical time constant.

### 5.4 Literatur

- [5.1] H. K. Khalil, Nonlinear Systems (3rd Edition). New Jersey: Prentice Hall, 2002.
- [5.2] M. Vidyasagar, Nonlinear Systems Analysis. New Jersey: Prentice Hall, 1993.
- [5.3] P. Kokotović, H. K. Khalil, and J. O'Reilly, Singular Pertubation Methods in Control: Analysis and Design. Philadelphia, USA: SIAM, 1999.

# **6** Exact Linearization and Flatness

This chapter deals with the basics of designing state feedback using differential geometric methods. In a first step, the fundamental ideas and relationships are presented based on a representation in local coordinates. A more detailed differential geometric interpretation of the concepts is then provided in the appendix A.

#### 6.1 Input-Output Linearization

Although the theory presented here is also applicable to more general nonlinear systems of the form

$$\dot{\mathbf{x}} = \mathbf{f}(\mathbf{x}, u), \tag{6.1a}$$

$$y = h(\mathbf{x}, u),\tag{6.1b}$$

we will, for simplicity, focus on the class of *nonlinear systems with affine input* (also referred to as affine input systems)

$$\dot{\mathbf{x}} = \mathbf{f}(\mathbf{x}) + \mathbf{g}(\mathbf{x})u \tag{6.2a}$$

$$y = h(\mathbf{x}) \tag{6.2b}$$

with state  $\mathbf{x} \in \mathbb{R}^n$ , input  $u \in \mathbb{R}$ , output  $y \in \mathbb{R}$ , smooth vector fields  $\mathbf{f}(\mathbf{x})$  and  $\mathbf{g}(\mathbf{x})$ , and a smooth function  $h(\mathbf{x})$ .

*Exercise* 6.1. Show that the parallel connection, series connection, inversion, and feedback of affine input systems remains affine in its inputs.

Examining the time derivative of y along a solution curve of (6.2), we obtain

$$\dot{y} = \frac{\partial h}{\partial \mathbf{x}} \dot{\mathbf{x}} = \frac{\partial h}{\partial \mathbf{x}} (\mathbf{f}(\mathbf{x}) + \mathbf{g}(\mathbf{x})u) = \mathcal{L}_{\mathbf{f}} h(\mathbf{x}) + \mathcal{L}_{\mathbf{g}} h(\mathbf{x})u .$$
(6.3)

In (6.3), the expressions  $L_{\mathbf{f}}h$  and  $L_{\mathbf{g}}h$  describe the *Lie derivative* of the scalar function  $h(\mathbf{x})$  along the vector fields  $\mathbf{f}(\mathbf{x})$  and  $\mathbf{g}(\mathbf{x})$ . Assuming  $L_{\mathbf{g}}h(\bar{\mathbf{x}}) \neq 0$ , in a neighborhood  $\mathcal{U} \subset \mathbb{R}^n$  of  $\bar{\mathbf{x}}$ , the system (6.2) can be transformed, using

$$u = \frac{1}{\mathrm{L}_{\mathbf{g}}h(\mathbf{x})}(-\mathrm{L}_{\mathbf{f}}h(\mathbf{x}) + v) \tag{6.4}$$

into a first-order linear system with new input v and output y of the form

$$\dot{y} = v \tag{6.5}$$

Lecture Nonlinear Dynamical Systems and Control (SS 2025) ©A. Deutschmann-Olek and A. Kugi, Institut für Automatisierungs- und Regelungstechnik, TU Wien

Now, if the expression  $L_{\mathbf{g}}h(\mathbf{x})$  from (6.3) is identically zero in a neighborhood  $\mathcal{U}$  of  $\bar{\mathbf{x}}$ , the time derivative of  $\dot{y} = L_{\mathbf{f}}h(\mathbf{x})$  along a solution curve of (6.2) is calculated as

$$\ddot{y} = \frac{\partial \mathcal{L}_{\mathbf{f}} h(\mathbf{x})}{\partial \mathbf{x}} \dot{\mathbf{x}} = \frac{\partial \mathcal{L}_{\mathbf{f}} h(\mathbf{x})}{\partial \mathbf{x}} (\mathbf{f}(\mathbf{x}) + \mathbf{g}(\mathbf{x})u) = \mathcal{L}_{\mathbf{f}}^2 h(\mathbf{x}) + \mathcal{L}_{\mathbf{g}} \mathcal{L}_{\mathbf{f}} h(\mathbf{x})u .$$
(6.6)

It is worth noting that  $L^k_{\mathbf{f}}h(\mathbf{x}), k \in \mathbb{N}$  is defined by the recursion

$$\mathbf{L}_{\mathbf{f}}^{k}h(\mathbf{x}) = \mathbf{L}_{\mathbf{f}}\left(\mathbf{L}_{\mathbf{f}}^{k-1}h(\mathbf{x})\right), \qquad \mathbf{L}_{\mathbf{f}}^{0}h(\mathbf{x}) = h(\mathbf{x}), \tag{6.7}$$

which directly leads to the definition of the *relative degree* of an affine input system (6.2).

**Definition 6.1** (Relative degree of a single-input system). The system (6.2) has the relative degree r at the point  $\mathbf{\bar{x}} \in \mathcal{U}$  if

(A)  $L_{\mathbf{g}}L_{\mathbf{f}}^{k}h(\mathbf{x}) = 0, \ k = 0, \dots, r-2$  for all  $\mathbf{x}$  in the neighborhood  $\mathcal{U}$  of  $\mathbf{\bar{x}}$ , and (B)  $L_{\mathbf{g}}L_{\mathbf{f}}^{r-1}h(\mathbf{\bar{x}}) \neq 0.$ 

It is easy to see that the relative degree r corresponds exactly to the number of temporal differentiations that need to be applied to the output y in order for the input u to appear explicitly for the first time. To see this, consider the following chain

$$y = h(\mathbf{x})$$

$$\dot{y} = \mathbf{L}_{\mathbf{f}}h(\mathbf{x}) + \underbrace{\mathbf{L}_{\mathbf{g}}h(\mathbf{x})}_{=0} u$$

$$\ddot{y} = \mathbf{L}_{\mathbf{f}}^{2}h(\mathbf{x}) + \underbrace{\mathbf{L}_{\mathbf{g}}\mathbf{L}_{\mathbf{f}}h(\mathbf{x})}_{=0} u$$

$$\vdots$$

$$y^{(r-1)} = \mathbf{L}_{\mathbf{f}}^{r-1}h(\mathbf{x}) + \underbrace{\mathbf{L}_{\mathbf{g}}\mathbf{L}_{\mathbf{f}}^{r-2}h(\mathbf{x})}_{=0} u$$

$$y^{(r)} = \mathbf{L}_{\mathbf{f}}^{r}h(\mathbf{x}) + \mathbf{L}_{\mathbf{g}}\mathbf{L}_{\mathbf{f}}^{r-1}h(\mathbf{x})u$$

$$(6.8)$$

Clearly, the state feedback law

$$u = \frac{1}{\mathrm{L}_{\mathbf{g}}\mathrm{L}_{\mathbf{f}}^{r-1}h(\mathbf{x})}(-\mathrm{L}_{\mathbf{f}}^{r}h(\mathbf{x}) + v)$$
(6.9)

leads to a linear input-output behavior in the form of an r-fold integrator chain

$$y^{(r)} = v . (6.10)$$

Example 6.1. Considering a linear time-invariant single-input system

$$\dot{\mathbf{x}} = \mathbf{A}\mathbf{x} + \mathbf{b}u \tag{6.11a}$$

$$y = \mathbf{c}^{\mathrm{T}} \mathbf{x} \tag{6.11b}$$

Lecture Nonlinear Dynamical Systems and Control (SS 2025) ©A. Deutschmann-Olek and A. Kugi, Institut für Automatisierungs- und Regelungstechnik, TU Wien

with a relative degree r, the conditions (A) and (B) from Definition 6.1 are

(A) 
$$\mathbf{c}^{\mathrm{T}}\mathbf{b} = \mathbf{c}^{\mathrm{T}}\mathbf{A}\mathbf{b} = \ldots = \mathbf{c}^{\mathrm{T}}\mathbf{A}^{r-2}\mathbf{b} = 0$$
 (6.12a)

(B) 
$$\mathbf{c}^{\mathrm{T}}\mathbf{A}^{r-1}\mathbf{b}\neq 0$$
. (6.12b)

Since the transfer function associated with (6.11) can be written in the form

$$G(s) = \mathbf{c}^{\mathrm{T}} (s\mathbf{E} - \mathbf{A})^{-1} \mathbf{b} = \frac{1}{s} \mathbf{c}^{\mathrm{T}} \left(\mathbf{E} - \frac{\mathbf{A}}{s}\right)^{-1} \mathbf{b} = \frac{1}{s} \mathbf{c}^{\mathrm{T}} \sum_{j=0}^{\infty} \left(\frac{\mathbf{A}}{s}\right)^{j} \mathbf{b}$$
(6.13)

it is immediately apparent that the first non-vanishing term for j = r - 1 with  $s^r$  in the denominator. The relative degree of a linear time-invariant single-input system corresponds to the difference in degree between the denominator and numerator polynomials of the associated transfer function.

Using a (local) diffeomorphism  $\mathbf{z} = \mathbf{\Phi}(\mathbf{x})$ , the system (6.2) with relative degree r can be transformed into the so-called Byrnes-Isidori normal form. A nonlinear state transformation of the form

$$\mathbf{z} = \begin{bmatrix} \phi_1(\mathbf{x}) \\ \phi_2(\mathbf{x}) \\ \vdots \\ \phi_n(\mathbf{x}) \end{bmatrix} = \mathbf{\Phi}(\mathbf{x})$$
(6.14)

is called a local diffeomorphism if (A)  $\mathbf{\Phi}(\mathbf{x})$  is invertible for all  $\mathbf{x}$  in an open neighborhood  $\mathcal{U} \subset \mathbb{R}^n$  of a point  $\mathbf{\bar{x}}$  (i.e., there exists a  $\mathbf{\Phi}^{-1}(\mathbf{z})$  such that  $\mathbf{\Phi}^{-1}(\mathbf{\Phi}(\mathbf{x})) = \mathbf{x}$ ) and (B) both  $\mathbf{\Phi}(\mathbf{x})$  and  $\mathbf{\Phi}^{-1}(\mathbf{z})$  are smooth mappings.

**Lemma 6.1** (State transformation to Byrnes-Isidori normal form). Assume that system (6.2) has a relative degree  $r \leq n$  at the point  $\bar{\mathbf{x}}$ . If r is strictly less than n, then one can always find (n-r) functions  $\phi_{r+1}(\mathbf{x}), \ldots, \phi_n(\mathbf{x})$  such that with

$$\mathbf{z} = \begin{bmatrix} z_1 \\ \vdots \\ z_n \end{bmatrix} = \mathbf{\Phi}(\mathbf{x}) = \begin{bmatrix} h(\mathbf{x}) \\ \mathbf{L}_{\mathbf{f}}h(\mathbf{x}) \\ \vdots \\ \mathbf{L}_{\mathbf{f}}^{r-1}h(\mathbf{x}) \\ \phi_{r+1}(\mathbf{x}) \\ \vdots \\ \phi_n(\mathbf{x}) \end{bmatrix}$$
(6.15)

a local diffeomorphism in a neighborhood  $\mathcal{U}$  of  $\bar{\mathbf{x}}$  is given. Furthermore, it is always possible to choose the functions  $\phi_{r+1}(\mathbf{x}), \ldots, \phi_n(\mathbf{x})$  such that  $L_{\mathbf{g}}\phi_k(\mathbf{x}) = 0$ ,  $k = r+1, \ldots, n$ , for all  $\mathbf{x} \in \mathcal{U}$ .

The proof of this lemma can be found in the literature cited at the end.

Lecture Nonlinear Dynamical Systems and Control (SS 2025) ©A. Deutschmann-Olek and A. Kugi, Institut für Automatisierungs- und Regelungstechnik, TU Wien

Applying the nonlinear state transformation (6.15) to system (6.2) using (6.8), one obtains the transformed system in *Byrnes-Isidori normal form* 

$$\Sigma_{1} : \begin{cases} \dot{z}_{1} = z_{2} \\ \dot{z}_{2} = z_{3} \\ \vdots \\ \dot{z}_{r} = L_{\mathbf{f}}^{r} h(\mathbf{\Phi}^{-1}(\mathbf{z})) + L_{\mathbf{g}} L_{\mathbf{f}}^{r-1} h(\mathbf{\Phi}^{-1}(\mathbf{z})) u = b(\mathbf{z}) + a(\mathbf{z}) u \\ \dot{z}_{r} = L_{\mathbf{f}} \phi_{r+1}(\mathbf{\Phi}^{-1}(\mathbf{z})) + \underbrace{L_{\mathbf{g}} \phi_{r+1}(\mathbf{\Phi}^{-1}(\mathbf{z}))}_{=0} u = q_{r+1}(\mathbf{z}) \\ \vdots \\ \dot{z}_{n} = L_{\mathbf{f}} \phi_{n}(\mathbf{\Phi}^{-1}(\mathbf{z})) + \underbrace{L_{\mathbf{g}} \phi_{n}(\mathbf{\Phi}^{-1}(\mathbf{z}))}_{=0} u = q_{n}(\mathbf{z}) , \end{cases}$$
(6.16b)  
$$y = z_{1} .$$
(6.16c)

**Theorem 6.1** (Exact Input-Output Linearization). Assume that the system (6.2) has a relative degree  $r \leq n$  at the point  $\bar{\mathbf{x}}$ . The state control law

$$u = \frac{1}{a(\mathbf{z})}(-b(\mathbf{z}) + v) = \frac{1}{L_{\mathbf{g}}L_{\mathbf{f}}^{r-1}h(\mathbf{x})}(-L_{\mathbf{f}}^{r}h(\mathbf{x}) + v)$$
(6.17)

transforms the system (6.2) or (6.16) in a neighborhood  $\mathcal{U}$  of  $\bar{\mathbf{x}}$  into a system with a linear input-output behavior from the new input v to the output y with the transfer function

$$G(s) = \frac{1}{s^r} av{6.18}$$

The theorem can be trivially shown by substituting (6.17) into (6.16). Furthermore, it is easy to see that by choosing the new input v in the form

$$v = -\sum_{j=1}^{r} a_{j-1} z_j + \tilde{v} = -\sum_{j=1}^{r} a_{j-1} \mathcal{L}_{\mathbf{f}}^{j-1} h(\mathbf{x}) + \tilde{v}$$
(6.19)

the denominator polynomial of the transfer function  $\tilde{G}(s)$  from input  $\tilde{v}$  to output y,

$$\tilde{G}(s) = \frac{1}{s^r + a_{r-1}s^{r-1} + \ldots + a_1s + a_0} , \qquad (6.20)$$

can be freely specified via the coefficients  $a_j$ ,  $j = 0, \ldots, r - 1$ .

*Example 6.2.* For the system  $\mathbf{E}$ 

$$\dot{\mathbf{x}} = \begin{bmatrix} -x_1^3\\\cos(x_1)\cos(x_2)\\x_2 \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} \cos(x_2)\\1\\0 \end{bmatrix} u \tag{6.21a}$$

(6.21b)

Becture Konlinear Dynamical Systems and Control (SS 2025) ©A. Deutschmann-Olek and A. Kugi, Institut für Automatisierungs- und Regelungstechnik, TU Wien

compute a state feedback law using the method of exact input-output linearization. The relative degree of (6.21) is calculated as

$$\mathbf{L}_{\mathbf{g}}h(\mathbf{x}) = \underbrace{\begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}}_{\frac{\partial}{\partial \mathbf{x}}x_3} \underbrace{\begin{bmatrix} \cos(x_2) \\ 1 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}}_{\mathbf{g}(\mathbf{x})} = 0, \qquad \mathbf{L}_{\mathbf{g}}\mathbf{L}_{\mathbf{f}}h(\mathbf{x}) = 1 \neq 0 \tag{6.22}$$

to be r = 2. With  $\phi_1(\mathbf{x}) = h(\mathbf{x}) = x_3$  and  $\phi_2(\mathbf{x}) = L_{\mathbf{f}}h(\mathbf{x}) = x_2$ , the first two components of the state transformation are fixed to Byrnes-Isidori normal form according to (6.15). The third component  $\phi_3(\mathbf{x})$  is chosen such that  $\mathbf{\Phi}(\mathbf{x})$  is a (local) diffeomorphism and satisfies

$$L_{\mathbf{g}}\phi_3(\mathbf{x}) = \frac{\partial}{\partial \mathbf{x}}\phi_3(\mathbf{x}) \begin{bmatrix} \cos(x_2) \\ 1 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix} = \frac{\partial}{\partial x_1}\phi_3(\mathbf{x})\cos(x_2) + \frac{\partial}{\partial x_2}\phi_3(\mathbf{x}) = 0 .$$
(6.23)

A more detailed analysis of the partial differential equation (6.23) shows that any function with argument  $\sin(x_2) - x_1$  is a suitable solution. Furthermore, the Jacobian matrix of  $\mathbf{\Phi}(\mathbf{x})$ 

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial \mathbf{x}} \mathbf{\Phi}(\mathbf{x}) = \frac{\partial}{\partial \mathbf{x}} \begin{bmatrix} x_3 \\ x_2 \\ \sin(x_2) - x_1 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ -1 & \cos(x_2) & 0 \end{bmatrix}, \quad (6.24)$$

confirms that  $\Phi(\mathbf{x})$  is a diffeomorphism. The system (6.21) in Byrnes-Isidori normal form is given by

$$\Sigma_{1} : \begin{cases} \dot{z}_{1} = z_{2} \\ \dot{z}_{2} = \mathcal{L}_{\mathbf{f}}^{2} h(\mathbf{\Phi}^{-1}(\mathbf{z})) + \mathcal{L}_{\mathbf{g}} \mathcal{L}_{\mathbf{f}} h(\mathbf{\Phi}^{-1}(\mathbf{z})) u = b(\mathbf{z}) + a(\mathbf{z}) u \end{cases}$$
(6.25a)

$$\Sigma_2 : \left\{ \dot{z}_3 = \mathcal{L}_{\mathbf{f}} \phi_3 \left( \mathbf{\Phi}^{-1}(\mathbf{z}) \right) = q_3(\mathbf{z})$$
(6.25b)

$$y = z_1 \tag{6.25c}$$

with

$$L_{f}^{2}h(\mathbf{x}) = \cos(x_{1})\cos(x_{2})$$
, (6.26a)

$$L_{g}L_{f}h(\mathbf{x}) = 1 , \qquad (6.26b)$$

$$L_{\mathbf{f}}\phi_3(\mathbf{x}) = x_1^3 + \cos(x_1)(\cos(x_2))^2$$
(6.26c)

and the inverse state transformation

$$\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{\Phi}^{-1}(\mathbf{z}) = \begin{bmatrix} \sin(z_2) - z_3 \\ z_2 \\ z_1 \end{bmatrix}.$$
 (6.27)

Thus, (6.25) reads

$$\Sigma_1 : \begin{cases} \dot{z}_1 = z_2 \\ \dot{z}_2 = \cos(\sin(z_2) - z_3)\cos(z_2) + u \end{cases}$$
(6.28a)

$$\Sigma_2 : \left\{ \dot{z}_3 = (\sin(z_2) - z_3)^3 + \cos(\sin(z_2) - z_3)(\cos(z_2))^2 \right\} .$$
 (6.28b)

Note that for computing the state feedback law (6.17), (6.19) using exact input-output linearization, the transformation to Byrnes-Isidori normal form (6.28) is not necessary. One can directly calculate the control law in the original coordinates **x** with (6.17), (6.19)

$$u = -\cos(x_1)\cos(x_2) - a_0x_3 - a_1x_2 + \tilde{v} .$$
(6.29)

However, notice that for r < n, the input-output behavior of the system controlled by the state feedback law (6.17) is described by a system of lower order (namely r) than the system order n, compare (6.2) or (6.16) with (6.18) or (6.20). From linear control theory it is known that this can only occur if the state-space model is not fully reachable or not fully observable (or both). Furthermore, it is known that an unstable non-reachable and/or non-observable subsystem implies that the plant cannot be stabilized by *any* designed controller for the given actuator-sensor configuration. Obviously, the state feedback law (6.17), (6.19) leads to a stable closed loop only if the – as will be shown in the next section – non-observable subsystem  $\Sigma_2$ according to (6.16) is (asymptotically) stable.

# 6.2 Zero Dynamics

In the first step, we will discuss the so-called *Output-Zeroing Problem*: how must the initial state  $\mathbf{x}_0$  and the control input u(t) of the system (6.2) be chosen so that the output y(t) is identically zero for all times t. This question can be immediately answered using the Byrnes-Isidori normal form (6.16). For a more compact notation, the states of the subsystems  $\Sigma_1$  and  $\Sigma_2$  are combined into two vectors of the form

$$\boldsymbol{\xi} = \begin{bmatrix} z_1 \\ \vdots \\ z_r \end{bmatrix} \quad \text{und} \quad \boldsymbol{\eta} = \begin{bmatrix} z_{r+1} \\ \vdots \\ z_n \end{bmatrix}$$
(6.30)

and the system (6.16) is rewritten as

$$\Sigma_{1}:\begin{cases} \dot{z}_{1} = z_{2} \\ \dot{z}_{2} = z_{3} \\ \vdots \end{cases}$$
(6.31a)

$$iggl\{ \dot{z}_r = b(oldsymbol{\xi},oldsymbol{\eta}) + a(oldsymbol{\xi},oldsymbol{\eta}) u \ iggr\}$$

$$\Sigma_2 : \left\{ \dot{\boldsymbol{\eta}} = \mathbf{q}(\boldsymbol{\xi}, \boldsymbol{\eta}) \right. \tag{6.31b}$$

$$y = z_1 {.} {(6.31c)}$$

It is now immediately clear that from  $y(t) = h(\mathbf{x}) = z_1 \equiv 0$ , it follows

$$\dot{y} = \mathbf{L}_{\mathbf{f}} h(\mathbf{x}) = z_2 \equiv 0 ,$$
  

$$\ddot{y} = \mathbf{L}_{\mathbf{f}}^2 h(\mathbf{x}) = z_3 \equiv 0 ,$$
  

$$\dots$$
  

$$y^{(r-1)} = \mathbf{L}_{\mathbf{f}}^{r-1} h(\mathbf{x}) = z_r \equiv 0$$
(6.32)

for all times t. Furthermore, the control input u(t) must satisfy the following condition

$$b(\mathbf{0}, \boldsymbol{\eta}) + a(\mathbf{0}, \boldsymbol{\eta})u = 0 \Rightarrow u(t) = -\frac{b(\mathbf{0}, \boldsymbol{\eta}(t))}{a(\mathbf{0}, \boldsymbol{\eta}(t))}$$
(6.33)

so that  $\dot{z}_r = L_{\mathbf{f}}^r h(\mathbf{x}) \equiv 0$  for all times t, see (6.31). Here,  $\boldsymbol{\eta}(t)$  denotes a solution of the differential equation

$$\dot{\boldsymbol{\eta}} = \mathbf{q}(\boldsymbol{0}, \boldsymbol{\eta}) \tag{6.34}$$

with the initial state  $\boldsymbol{\xi}(0) = \boldsymbol{0}$  and  $\boldsymbol{\eta}(0) = \boldsymbol{\eta}_0$  arbitrarily chosen. The differential equation (6.34) now describes the so-called *internal dynamics* of the system, which arises from selecting the initial value and the input in (6.31) or (6.2) in such a way that the output y(t) vanishes identically for all times t. This internal dynamics (6.34) is also referred to as zero dynamics. Geometrically, this can be interpreted as the trajectories of the system (6.2) for the control input u(t) according to (6.33) remaining on the manifold  $M_C = \left\{ \mathbf{x} \in \mathbb{R}^n | h(\mathbf{x}) = \mathcal{L}_{\mathbf{f}} h(\mathbf{x}) =, \ldots, \mathcal{L}_{\mathbf{f}}^{r-1} h(\mathbf{x}) = 0 \right\}$  for all times, provided that the initial state  $\mathbf{x}_0$  lies in  $M_C$ .

Example 6.3. Consider the linear time-invariant single-input system

$$\dot{\mathbf{x}} = \mathbf{A}\mathbf{x} + \mathbf{b}u \tag{6.35a}$$

$$y = \mathbf{c}^{\mathrm{T}} \mathbf{x} \tag{6.35b}$$

with the relative degree r and the transfer function

$$G(s) = \frac{b_0 + b_1 s + \dots + b_{n-r} s^{n-r}}{a_0 + a_1 s + \dots + a_{n-1} s^{n-1} + s^n}, \qquad b_{n-r} \neq 0.$$
(6.36)

٦

If the system is in the first standard form (controllability canonical form), the system matrices  $\mathbf{A}$ ,  $\mathbf{b}$ , and  $\mathbf{c}$  are given by

$$\mathbf{A} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 & 0 & \dots & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & \dots & 0 \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \ddots & \vdots \\ 0 & 0 & \dots & 0 & 1 \\ -a_0 & -a_1 & \dots & -a_{n-2} & -a_{n-1} \end{bmatrix}, \quad \mathbf{b} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \\ \vdots \\ 0 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}, \quad \mathbf{c} = \begin{bmatrix} b_0 \\ \vdots \\ b_{n-r} \\ 0 \\ \vdots \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}.$$
(6.37)

To transform the system (6.37) to Byrnes-Isidori normal form, we introduce the following (linear) state transformation according to (6.15)

$$\mathbf{z} = \begin{bmatrix} \boldsymbol{\xi} \\ \boldsymbol{\eta} \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} z_1 \\ \vdots \\ z_r \end{bmatrix} \\ \begin{bmatrix} z_{r+1} \\ \vdots \\ z_n \end{bmatrix} \end{bmatrix} = \mathbf{T}\mathbf{x} = \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{c}^{\mathrm{T}}\mathbf{x} \\ \mathbf{c}^{\mathrm{T}}\mathbf{A}\mathbf{x} \\ \vdots \\ \mathbf{c}^{\mathrm{T}}\mathbf{A}^{r-1}\mathbf{x} \\ x_1 \\ \vdots \\ x_{n-r} \end{bmatrix}.$$
(6.38)

It is easy to verify that  ${\bf T}$  is regular, as  ${\bf T}$  has the following structure

$$\mathbf{T} = \begin{bmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} & & & \\ & (**) & & \\ & & & & \\ & & & \\ & & & \\ & & & \\ & & & & \\ & & & & \\ & & & & \\ & &$$

The system (6.35) in the transformed state  $\mathbf{z}$  is therefore in Byrnes-Isidori normal

form given by

$$\Sigma_{1}:\begin{cases} \dot{z}_{1} = z_{2} \\ \dot{z}_{2} = z_{3} \\ \vdots \\ \dot{z}_{r} = \mathbf{c}^{\mathrm{T}}\mathbf{A}^{r}\mathbf{T}^{-1}\mathbf{z} + \mathbf{c}^{\mathrm{T}}\mathbf{A}^{r-1}\mathbf{b}u \end{cases}$$
(6.40a)

$$\Sigma_2 : \left\{ \dot{\boldsymbol{\eta}} = \mathbf{P}\boldsymbol{\xi} + \mathbf{Q}\boldsymbol{\eta} \right. \tag{6.40b}$$

$$y = z_1$$
 . (6.40c)

From (6.35) and (6.37), it is immediately apparent that for the components of  $\boldsymbol{\eta}^{\mathrm{T}} = [z_{r+1}, \ldots, z_n] = [x_1, \ldots, x_{n-r}]$ , the following holds

$$\dot{x}_j = x_{j+1}, \qquad j = 1, \dots, n-r$$
 (6.41)

Furthermore,  $x_{n-r+1}$  can be calculated from the relationship  $z_1 = \mathbf{c}^{\mathrm{T}} \mathbf{x} = b_0 x_1 + \ldots + b_{n-r} x_{n-r+1}$ , which yields (note that  $b_{n-r} \neq 0$  according to (6.36))

$$x_{n-r+1} = \frac{1}{b_{n-r}} (z_1 - b_0 x_1 - \dots - b_{n-r-1} x_{n-r}) .$$
 (6.42)

Thus, the matrices **P** and **Q** of the subsystem  $\Sigma_2$  of (6.40) are given as follows

$$\mathbf{Q} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 & 0 & \dots & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & \dots & 0 \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \ddots & \vdots \\ 0 & 0 & \dots & 0 & 1 \\ -\frac{b_0}{b_{n-r}} & -\frac{b_1}{b_{n-r}} & \dots & -\frac{b_{n-r-2}}{b_{n-r}} & -\frac{b_{n-r-1}}{b_{n-r}} \end{bmatrix}, \quad (6.43a)$$
$$\mathbf{P} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 & 0 & \dots & 0 \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots & \vdots \\ 0 & 0 & \dots & 0 & 0 \\ \frac{1}{b_{n-r}} & 0 & \dots & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}. \quad (6.43b)$$

According to (6.34), the zero dynamics of the system (6.40) are

$$\dot{\boldsymbol{\eta}} = \mathbf{Q}\boldsymbol{\eta} , \qquad (6.44a)$$

$$\boldsymbol{\eta}(0) = \boldsymbol{\eta}_0 \;, \tag{6.44b}$$

Lecture Nonlinear Dynamical Systems and Control (SS 2025) ©A. Deutschmann-Olek and A. Kugi, Institut für Automatisierungs- und Regelungstechnik, TU Wien

where the characteristic polynomial of the matrix  ${\bf Q}$  looks as follows

$$b_0 + b_1 s + \ldots + b_{n-r-1} s^{n-r-1} + b_{n-r} s^{n-r}$$
(6.45)

It can be seen that the eigenvalues of the zero dynamics (6.44) for the output y are identical to the zeros of the corresponding transfer function G(s) according to (6.36).

*Exercise* 6.2. Calculate and analyze the zero dynamics of the system

$$\dot{\mathbf{x}} = \begin{bmatrix} x_3 - x_2^3 \\ -x_2 \\ x_1^2 - x_3 \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ -1 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix} u$$
(6.46a)  
$$y = x_1 .$$
(6.46b)

Without loss of generality, assume that  $\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{x}_R = \mathbf{0}$  is an equilibrium point of the system (6.2) for  $u = u_R = 0$ , i.e.,  $\mathbf{f}(\mathbf{0}) = \mathbf{0}$ , and  $h(\mathbf{0}) = 0$  for the following. The equilibrium point  $\mathbf{z}_R = \begin{bmatrix} \boldsymbol{\xi}_R^{\mathrm{T}}, \boldsymbol{\eta}_R^{\mathrm{T}} \end{bmatrix}^{\mathrm{T}} = \boldsymbol{\Phi}(\mathbf{x}_R)$  of the corresponding system in Byrnes-Isidori normal form (6.16) is then  $\boldsymbol{\xi}_R = \mathbf{0}$  (cf. (6.15), (6.30)) and  $\boldsymbol{\eta}_R$  is calculated as the equilibrium point of the zero dynamics (cf. (6.34))

$$\mathbf{0} = \mathbf{q}(\mathbf{0}, \boldsymbol{\eta}_R) \ . \tag{6.47}$$

**Definition 6.2** (Minimum-phase nonlinear system). The system (6.2) is said to be locally asymptotically (exponentially) minimum-phase at  $\mathbf{x}_R = \mathbf{0}$  if the equilibrium point  $\boldsymbol{\eta}_R$  of the zero dynamics (6.34) is locally asymptotically (exponentially) stable.

At this point, it should be noted that according to Definition 6.2, the property of phase minimality depends on the equilibrium  $\mathbf{x}_R$  and can therefore vary for the same system from one equilibrium to another.

Considering now the system (6.2) in Byrnes-Isidori normal form (6.31) given as

$$\dot{z}_1 = z_2 
\dot{z}_2 = z_3 
\vdots 
\dot{z}_r = b(\boldsymbol{\xi}, \boldsymbol{\eta}) + a(\boldsymbol{\xi}, \boldsymbol{\eta})u 
\dot{\boldsymbol{\eta}} = \mathbf{q}(\boldsymbol{\xi}, \boldsymbol{\eta}) 
y = z_1$$
(6.48)

and substituting the control law (6.17) and (6.19) with  $\tilde{v} = 0$ , i.e.,

$$u = \frac{1}{a(\boldsymbol{\xi}, \boldsymbol{\eta})} \left( -b(\boldsymbol{\xi}, \boldsymbol{\eta}) - \sum_{j=1}^{r} a_{j-1} \xi_j \right)$$
  
$$= \frac{1}{\mathrm{L}_{\mathbf{g}} \mathrm{L}_{\mathbf{f}}^{r-1} h(\mathbf{x})} \left( -\mathrm{L}_{\mathbf{f}}^{r} h(\mathbf{x}) - \sum_{j=1}^{r} a_{j-1} \mathrm{L}_{\mathbf{f}}^{j-1} h(\mathbf{x}) \right) , \qquad (6.49)$$

the closed loop system becomes

$$\dot{\boldsymbol{\xi}} = \mathbf{A}_r \boldsymbol{\xi} \tag{6.50a}$$

$$\hat{\boldsymbol{\eta}} = \mathbf{q}(\boldsymbol{\xi}, \boldsymbol{\eta}) \tag{6.50b}$$

$$y = z_1 = \xi_1$$
 (6.50c)

with

$$\mathbf{A}_{r} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 & \dots & 0 \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ 0 & 0 & \dots & 1 \\ -a_{0} & -a_{1} & -a_{r-2} & -a_{r-1} \end{bmatrix}.$$
 (6.50d)

It is immediately apparent that the subsystem  $\dot{\eta} = \mathbf{q}(\boldsymbol{\xi}, \boldsymbol{\eta})$  is not observable via the output y, as the state  $\boldsymbol{\eta}$  has neither a direct nor an indirect influence on the output y through the state  $\boldsymbol{\xi}$ .

If one chooses the coefficients  $a_j$ , j = 0, ..., r - 1 in (6.50) such that  $\mathbf{A}_r$  is a Hurwitz matrix, and if the system (6.2) is locally exponentially minimum-phase at  $\mathbf{x}_R = \mathbf{0}$  according to Definition 6.2 (corresponding to  $\boldsymbol{\xi} = \boldsymbol{\xi}_R = \mathbf{0}$  and  $\boldsymbol{\eta} = \boldsymbol{\eta}_R$ ), i.e., all eigenvalues of  $\frac{\partial \mathbf{q}}{\partial \boldsymbol{\eta}}(\mathbf{0}, \boldsymbol{\eta}_R)$  have strictly negative real parts, then the dynamics matrix of the linearized closed loop system (6.50) around the equilibrium  $\boldsymbol{\xi} = \boldsymbol{\xi}_R = \mathbf{0}$  and  $\boldsymbol{\eta} = \boldsymbol{\eta}_R$  given by

$$\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t} \begin{bmatrix} \Delta \boldsymbol{\xi} \\ \Delta \boldsymbol{\eta} \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{A}_r & \mathbf{0} \\ \frac{\partial \mathbf{q}}{\partial \boldsymbol{\xi}}(\mathbf{0}, \boldsymbol{\eta}_R) & \frac{\partial \mathbf{q}}{\partial \boldsymbol{\eta}}(\mathbf{0}, \boldsymbol{\eta}_R) \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} \Delta \boldsymbol{\xi} \\ \Delta \boldsymbol{\eta} \end{bmatrix}$$
(6.51)

is also a Hurwitz matrix.

*Exercise* 6.3. Show that the dynamics matrix of (6.51) is a Hurwitz matrix if  $\mathbf{A}_r$  and  $\frac{\partial \mathbf{q}}{\partial n}(\mathbf{0}, \boldsymbol{\eta}_R)$  are Hurwitz matrices.

According to Theorem 3.8, the equilibrium  $\mathbf{x}_R = \mathbf{0}$  or  $\boldsymbol{\xi} = \boldsymbol{\xi}_R = \mathbf{0}$  and  $\boldsymbol{\eta} = \boldsymbol{\eta}_R$  of the closed-loop system (6.50) is locally asymptotically (exponentially) stable.

Obviously, the method of exact input-output linearization for the system (6.2) only yields a stable control loop if the system is asymptotically (exponentially) minimum-phase. Note that this property can be easily verified without explicit calculation of the zero dynamics using the indirect method of Lyapunov according to Theorem 3.8. To do this,

Lecture Nonlinear Dynamical Systems and Control (SS 2025) ©A. Deutschmann-Olek and A. Kugi, Institut für Automatisierungs- und Regelungstechnik, TU Wien

linearize the system (6.2) around the equilibrium point  $\mathbf{x}_R = \mathbf{0}$ ,  $u_R = 0$  in the form

$$\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t}\Delta \mathbf{x} = \mathbf{A}\Delta \mathbf{x} + \mathbf{b}\Delta u \tag{6.52a}$$

$$\Delta y = \mathbf{c}^{\mathrm{T}} \Delta \mathbf{x} \tag{6.52b}$$

with

$$\mathbf{A} = \left(\frac{\partial \mathbf{f}}{\partial \mathbf{x}}\right)(\mathbf{x}_R) + \left(\frac{\partial \mathbf{g}}{\partial \mathbf{x}}\right)(\mathbf{x}_R)u_R , \qquad (6.52c)$$

$$\mathbf{b} = \mathbf{g}(\mathbf{x}_R) , \qquad (6.52d)$$

$$\mathbf{c}^{\mathrm{T}} = \left(\frac{\partial h}{\partial \mathbf{x}}\right)(\mathbf{x}_{R}) \ . \tag{6.52e}$$

The eigenvalues of the linearized zero dynamics correspond to the zeros of the transfer function (see (6.36), (6.44), and (6.45))

$$G(s) = \mathbf{c}^{\mathrm{T}} (s\mathbf{E} - \mathbf{A})^{-1} \mathbf{b} .$$
(6.53)

According to Theorem 3.8, the system is locally asymptotically (exponentially) minimumphase at  $\mathbf{x}_R = \mathbf{0}$ ,  $u_R = 0$  if all zeros of G(s) from (6.53) have strictly negative real parts, and it is not if at least one zero of G(s) lies in the right open complex half-plane.

# 6.3 Input-State Linearization

The problems associated with zero dynamics obviously do not arise when the relative degree r = n. Assuming that the system (6.2) with the output  $y = h(\mathbf{x})$  has relative degree r = n, then the system can be mapped to the new state  $\mathbf{z}$  by the state transformation (i.e., a diffeomorphism, see (6.15))

$$\mathbf{z} = \begin{bmatrix} z_1 \\ \vdots \\ z_n \end{bmatrix} = \mathbf{\Phi}(\mathbf{x}) = \begin{bmatrix} h(\mathbf{x}) \\ \mathbf{L}_{\mathbf{f}}h(\mathbf{x}) \\ \vdots \\ \mathbf{L}_{\mathbf{f}}^{n-1}h(\mathbf{x}) \end{bmatrix}$$
(6.54)

and the control law (see (6.17))

$$u = \frac{1}{a(\mathbf{z})}(-b(\mathbf{z}) + v) = \frac{1}{L_{\mathbf{g}}L_{\mathbf{f}}^{n-1}h(\mathbf{x})}(-L_{\mathbf{f}}^{n}h(\mathbf{x}) + v)$$
(6.55)

into an exactly linear system in the new state  ${\bf z}$  of the form

$$\dot{\mathbf{z}} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 & \dots & 0 \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ 0 & 0 & \dots & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \mathbf{z} + \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ \vdots \\ 0 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix} v$$
(6.56)

Lecture Nonlinear Dynamical Systems and Control (SS 2025) ©A. Deutschmann-Olek and A. Kugi, Institut für Automatisierungs- und Regelungstechnik, TU Wien

with the new input v. Equation (6.56) is often referred to as the Brunovsky normal form and  $\mathbf{z}$  as the Brunovsky state of the system (6.2).

Even if the output  $y = h(\mathbf{x})$  of the system (6.2) has a relative degree r < n, one can ask whether there exists a fictitious output  $y = \lambda(\mathbf{x})$  that has a relative degree r = n. According to Definition 6.1,  $\lambda(\mathbf{x})$  must satisfy the following conditions:

- (A)  $L_{\mathbf{g}}L_{\mathbf{f}}^k\lambda(\mathbf{x}) = 0, \ k = 0, \dots, n-2$  for all  $\mathbf{x}$  in the neighborhood  $\mathcal{U}$  of  $\bar{\mathbf{x}}$  and
- (B)  $L_{\mathbf{g}}L_{\mathbf{f}}^{n-1}\lambda(\mathbf{\bar{x}}) \neq 0.$

As can be seen,  $\lambda(\mathbf{x})$  must satisfy several *partial differential equations of higher order*, since for example the expression  $L_{\mathbf{g}}L_{\mathbf{f}}\lambda(\mathbf{x})$  has the following form

$$L_{g}L_{f}\lambda(\mathbf{x}) = \frac{\partial}{\partial \mathbf{x}} \left( \left( \frac{\partial}{\partial \mathbf{x}} \lambda(\mathbf{x}) \right) \mathbf{f}(\mathbf{x}) \right) \mathbf{g}(\mathbf{x})$$
(6.57)

One can now transform the partial differential equations of higher order for  $\lambda(\mathbf{x})$  into a system of first-order partial differential equations of the so-called Frobenius type. For this purpose, the concept of the Lie bracket  $[\mathbf{f}, \mathbf{g}]$  or the Lie derivative  $L_{\mathbf{f}}\mathbf{g}$  of a vector field  $\mathbf{g}(\mathbf{x})$  along a vector field  $\mathbf{f}(\mathbf{x})$  must be introduced, which is defined in coordinates as follows

$$[\mathbf{f}, \mathbf{g}](\mathbf{x}) = \mathcal{L}_{\mathbf{f}} \mathbf{g}(\mathbf{x}) = \frac{\partial \mathbf{g}}{\partial \mathbf{x}} \mathbf{f}(\mathbf{x}) - \frac{\partial \mathbf{f}}{\partial \mathbf{x}} \mathbf{g}(\mathbf{x}) .$$
(6.58)

Analogous to the k-fold repeated Lie derivative of a scalar function (6.7), the k-fold Lie bracket can also be defined recursively in the form

$$\mathrm{ad}_{\mathbf{f}}^{k}\mathbf{g}(\mathbf{x}) = \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{f}, \mathrm{ad}_{\mathbf{f}}^{k-1}\mathbf{g} \end{bmatrix}(\mathbf{x}), \qquad \mathrm{ad}_{\mathbf{f}}^{0}\mathbf{g}(\mathbf{x}) = \mathbf{g}(\mathbf{x})$$
(6.59)

using the operator ad. With the help of the relationship

$$L_{[\mathbf{f},\mathbf{g}]}\lambda(\mathbf{x}) = L_{\mathbf{f}}L_{\mathbf{g}}\lambda(\mathbf{x}) - L_{\mathbf{g}}L_{\mathbf{f}}\lambda(\mathbf{x}) , \qquad (6.60)$$

the higher-order partial differential equations

$$L_{\mathbf{g}}\lambda(\mathbf{x}) = 0 ,$$

$$L_{\mathbf{g}}L_{\mathbf{f}}\lambda(\mathbf{x}) = 0 ,$$

$$\dots \qquad (6.61)$$

$$L_{\mathbf{g}}L_{\mathbf{f}}^{n-2}\lambda(\mathbf{x}) = 0 ,$$

$$L_{\mathbf{g}}L_{\mathbf{f}}^{n-1}\lambda(\bar{\mathbf{x}}) \neq 0$$

can be rewritten into a system of first-order partial differential equations of the Frobenius type

$$\begin{split} \mathbf{L}_{\mathbf{g}}\lambda(\mathbf{x}) &= 0 ,\\ \mathbf{L}_{\mathrm{ad}_{\mathbf{f}}\mathbf{g}(\mathbf{x})}\lambda(\mathbf{x}) &= 0 ,\\ & \cdots \\ \mathbf{L}_{\mathrm{ad}_{\mathbf{f}}^{n-2}\mathbf{g}(\mathbf{x})}\lambda(\mathbf{x}) &= 0 ,\\ \mathbf{L}_{\mathrm{ad}_{\mathbf{f}}^{n-1}\mathbf{g}(\mathbf{x})}\lambda(\bar{\mathbf{x}}) &\neq 0 . \end{split}$$
(6.62)

To show this, note that from  $L_{\mathbf{g}}\lambda(\mathbf{x}) = 0$  and  $L_{\mathbf{g}}L_{\mathbf{f}}\lambda(\mathbf{x}) = 0$  it follows that

$$L_{ad_{f}g(\mathbf{x})}\lambda(\mathbf{x}) = L_{f}\underbrace{L_{g}\lambda(\mathbf{x})}_{=0} - \underbrace{L_{g}L_{f}\lambda(\mathbf{x})}_{=0} = 0.$$
(6.63)

Recursive application of (6.60) shows that from  $L_{\mathbf{g}}\lambda(\mathbf{x}) = 0$ ,  $L_{\mathbf{g}}L_{\mathbf{f}}\lambda(\mathbf{x}) = 0$ , and  $L_{\mathbf{g}}L_{\mathbf{f}}^2\lambda(\mathbf{x}) = 0$  follows

$$L_{ad_{\mathbf{f}}^{2}\mathbf{g}(\mathbf{x})}\lambda(\mathbf{x}) = L_{[\mathbf{f},ad_{\mathbf{f}}\mathbf{g}](\mathbf{x})}\lambda(\mathbf{x})$$

$$= L_{\mathbf{f}}\underbrace{L_{ad_{\mathbf{f}}\mathbf{g}(\mathbf{x})}\lambda(\mathbf{x})}_{=0} - L_{\underline{ad_{\mathbf{f}}\mathbf{g}(\mathbf{x})}}L_{\mathbf{f}}\lambda(\mathbf{x})$$

$$= -\left(L_{\mathbf{f}}\underbrace{L_{\mathbf{g}}L_{\mathbf{f}}\lambda(\mathbf{x})}_{=0} - L_{\mathbf{g}}L_{\mathbf{f}}L_{\mathbf{f}}\lambda(\mathbf{x})\right)$$

$$= \underbrace{L_{\mathbf{g}}L_{\mathbf{f}}^{2}\lambda(\mathbf{x})}_{=0} = 0.$$
(6.64)

All further relationships can be shown in a similar manner. The existence of a solution  $\lambda(\mathbf{x})$  of the system of first-order partial differential equations (6.62) can now be verified using the following theorem.

**Theorem 6.2** (Existence of an output with relative degree r = n). There exists a solution  $\lambda(\mathbf{x})$  of the system of first-order partial differential equations (6.62) in a neighborhood  $\mathcal{U}$  of the point  $\bar{\mathbf{x}}$  if and only if

- (A) the matrix  $\left[\mathbf{g}, \mathrm{ad}_{\mathbf{f}}\mathbf{g}, \ldots, \mathrm{ad}_{\mathbf{f}}^{n-1}\mathbf{g}\right](\bar{\mathbf{x}})$  has rank n, and
- (B) the distribution  $D = \operatorname{span}\{\mathbf{g}, \operatorname{ad}_{\mathbf{f}}\mathbf{g}, \dots, \operatorname{ad}_{\mathbf{f}}^{n-2}\mathbf{g}\}\$  is involutive in a neighborhood  $\mathcal{U}$  of the point  $\bar{\mathbf{x}}$ .

In this case, the system is also called exactly input-state linearizable in the neighborhood of the point  $\bar{\mathbf{x}}$ .

The proof of this theorem is based on the *Frobenius' Theorem*, see Appendix A, and can be found in the literature cited at the end. As a reminder, a distribution D is called *involutive* if for every pair of vector fields  $\mathbf{f}_1(\mathbf{x}), \mathbf{f}_2(\mathbf{x}) \in D$ , it holds that  $[\mathbf{f}_1, \mathbf{f}_2](\mathbf{x}) \in D$ .

*Example* 6.4. As a simple example, consider the flexible robot arm shown in Figure 6.1.



Figure 6.1: Simple elastically coupled robot arm.

If we choose the state variables as the angles  $x_1$  and  $x_2$  and the angular velocities  $\dot{x}_1 = x_3$  and  $\dot{x}_2 = x_4$  of the drive motor and the robot arm, and the input as the motor torque u, then we obtain the equations of motion in the form

$$\dot{\mathbf{x}} = \underbrace{\begin{bmatrix} x_3 \\ x_4 \\ -\frac{c}{I_1}x_1 + \frac{c}{I_1}x_2 - \frac{d_1}{I_1}x_3 \\ \frac{c}{I_2}x_1 - \frac{c}{I_2}x_2 - \frac{mgl}{I_2}\cos(x_2) - \frac{d_2}{I_2}x_4 \end{bmatrix}}_{=\mathbf{f}(\mathbf{x})} + \underbrace{\begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \\ \frac{1}{I_1} \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}}_{=\mathbf{g}(\mathbf{x})} u .$$
(6.65)

Here, c denotes the linear stiffness constant of the elastic coupling, m the mass of the robot arm, g the gravitational constant, l the distance from the drive axis to the center of mass of the robot arm, and  $I_k$  or  $d_k$ , k = 1, 2, describe the moments of inertia and the viscous friction constants of the drive motor and the robot arm. To investigate whether the system (6.65) is exactly input-state linearizable, the

To investigate whether the system (6.65) is exactly input-state linearizable, the conditions (A) and (B) of Theorem 6.2 must be checked. A simple calculation shows that

$$\operatorname{rang}\left(\left[\mathbf{g}, \operatorname{ad}_{\mathbf{f}} \mathbf{g}, \operatorname{ad}_{\mathbf{f}}^{2} \mathbf{g}, \operatorname{ad}_{\mathbf{f}}^{3} \mathbf{g}\right]\right) = \operatorname{rang}\left(\begin{bmatrix} 0 & \frac{-1}{I_{1}} & -\frac{d_{1}}{I_{1}^{2}} & \frac{c}{I_{1}^{2}} - \frac{d_{1}^{2}}{I_{1}^{3}} \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & -\frac{c}{I_{2}I_{1}} \\ \frac{1}{I_{1}} & \frac{d_{1}}{I_{1}^{2}} & \frac{d_{1}^{2}}{I_{1}^{3}} - \frac{c}{I_{1}^{2}} & \frac{d_{1}^{3}}{I_{1}^{4}} - \frac{2cd_{1}}{I_{1}^{3}} \\ 0 & 0 & \frac{c}{I_{2}I_{1}} & \frac{c}{I_{2}I_{1}} \left(\frac{d_{1}}{I_{1}} + \frac{d_{2}}{I_{2}}\right) \end{bmatrix}\right)$$
$$= 4 \tag{6.66}$$

holds for all  $\mathbf{x} \in \mathbb{R}^4$ . Since all vector fields  $\mathbf{g}$ ,  $\mathrm{ad}_{\mathbf{f}}\mathbf{g}$ ,  $\mathrm{ad}_{\mathbf{f}}^2\mathbf{g}$  and  $\mathrm{ad}_{\mathbf{f}}^3\mathbf{g}$  are independent of  $\mathbf{x}$ , all Lie brackets are identically zero (cf. (6.58)), which means that the distribution

 $D = \operatorname{span}\left\{\mathbf{g}, \operatorname{ad}_{\mathbf{f}}\mathbf{g}, \operatorname{ad}_{\mathbf{f}}^{2}\mathbf{g}\right\}$  is certainly involutive. Therefore, according to Theorem 6.2, the existence of a solution  $\lambda(\mathbf{x})$  of the system of first-order PDEs (cf. (6.62))

$$L_{\mathbf{g}}\lambda(\mathbf{x}) = \frac{1}{I_1}\frac{\partial}{\partial x_3}\lambda(\mathbf{x}) = 0$$
(6.67a)

$$\mathcal{L}_{\mathrm{ad}_{\mathbf{f}}\mathbf{g}(\mathbf{x})}\lambda(\mathbf{x}) = -\frac{1}{I_1}\frac{\partial}{\partial x_1}\lambda(\mathbf{x}) + \frac{d_1}{I_1^2}\frac{\partial}{\partial x_3}\lambda(\mathbf{x}) = 0$$
(6.67b)

$$L_{\mathrm{ad}_{\mathbf{f}}^{2}\mathbf{g}(\mathbf{x})}\lambda(\mathbf{x}) = -\frac{d_{1}}{I_{1}^{2}}\frac{\partial}{\partial x_{1}}\lambda(\mathbf{x}) + \left(\frac{d_{1}^{2}}{I_{1}^{3}} - \frac{c}{I_{1}^{2}}\right)\frac{\partial}{\partial x_{3}}\lambda(\mathbf{x}) + \frac{c}{I_{2}I_{1}}\frac{\partial}{\partial x_{4}}\lambda(\mathbf{x})$$

$$= 0$$
(6.67c)

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{L}_{\mathrm{ad}_{\mathbf{f}}^{3}\mathbf{g}(\mathbf{x})}\lambda(\mathbf{x}) &= \left(\frac{c}{I_{1}^{2}} - \frac{d_{1}^{2}}{I_{1}^{3}}\right)\frac{\partial}{\partial x_{1}}\lambda(\mathbf{x}) - \frac{c}{I_{2}I_{1}}\frac{\partial}{\partial x_{2}}\lambda(\mathbf{x}) \\ &- \left(\frac{2cd_{1}}{I_{1}^{3}} - \frac{d_{1}^{3}}{I_{1}^{4}}\right)\frac{\partial}{\partial x_{3}}\lambda(\mathbf{x}) + \frac{c}{I_{2}I_{1}}\left(\frac{d_{1}}{I_{1}} + \frac{d_{2}}{I_{2}}\right)\frac{\partial}{\partial x_{4}}\lambda(\mathbf{x}) \end{aligned}$$
(6.67d)  
$$&= \beta(\mathbf{x}) \end{aligned}$$

is guaranteed for a  $\beta(\bar{\mathbf{x}}) \neq 0$ . Choosing  $\beta(\mathbf{x}) = -\frac{c}{I_2 I_1} \neq 0$ , we obtain the solution of (6.67) as  $\lambda(\mathbf{x}) = x_2$ . This solution can also be guessed directly from the equations of motion (6.65), by recalling that the quantity with relative degree r = n = 4 is sought, which needs to be differentiated r = n = 4 times for the input u to appear explicitly for the first time.

*Exercise* 6.4. Show that the system

$$\dot{\mathbf{x}} = \begin{bmatrix} 0\\ x_1 + x_2^2\\ x_1 - x_2 \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} \exp(x_2)\\ \exp(x_2)\\ 0 \end{bmatrix} u$$
(6.68)

is exactly input-state linearizable and calculate all possible outputs with relative degree r = n = 3.

For the following, assume that the output  $y = h(\mathbf{x})$  of the system (6.2) has a relative degree r = n. According to (6.8), the output variable y and its time derivatives can be expressed as follows:

$$y = h(\mathbf{x})$$

$$\dot{y} = \mathbf{L}_{\mathbf{f}} h(\mathbf{x})$$

$$\ddot{y} = \mathbf{L}_{\mathbf{f}}^2 h(\mathbf{x})$$

$$\vdots$$

$$y^{(n-1)} = \mathbf{L}_{\mathbf{f}}^{n-1} h(\mathbf{x})$$

$$y^{(n)} = \mathbf{L}_{\mathbf{f}}^n h(\mathbf{x}) + \mathbf{L}_{\mathbf{g}} \mathbf{L}_{\mathbf{f}}^{n-1} h(\mathbf{x}) u .$$
(6.69)

Since the state transformation (6.54) is regular, the entire state  $\mathbf{x}$  can be parameterized by the output variable y and its time derivatives up to order (n-1), i.e.,

$$\mathbf{x} = \psi_1(y, \dot{y}, \dots, y^{(n-1)}) = \mathbf{\Phi}^{-1}(\mathbf{z}), \qquad \mathbf{z}^{\mathrm{T}} = [y, \dot{y}, \dots, y^{(n-1)}].$$
 (6.70)

Furthermore, from the last line of (6.69), the input variable u can also be parameterized by the output variable y as

$$u = \psi_2 \left( y, \dot{y}, \dots, y^{(n)} \right) = \frac{y^{(n)} - \mathcal{L}_{\mathbf{f}}^n h(\mathbf{\Phi}^{-1}(\mathbf{z}))}{\mathcal{L}_{\mathbf{g}} \mathcal{L}_{\mathbf{f}}^{n-1} h(\mathbf{\Phi}^{-1}(\mathbf{z}))}, \qquad \mathbf{z}^{\mathrm{T}} = \left[ y, \dot{y}, \dots, y^{(n-1)} \right]$$
(6.71)

A dynamic system of the form (6.2), where all system variables (states and input variables) can be parameterized by an output variable y and its time derivatives, is called differentially flat. In this context, the output y is also referred to as the flat output. A more precise definition of flat systems will be provided later in this chapter. However, it is already immediately apparent from the discussion so far that in the single-inputsingle-output (SISO) case, an exactly input-state linearizable system of the form (6.2) is also differentially flat, and each output with relative degree r = n corresponds to a flat output of the system. Thus, Theorem 6.2 provides necessary and sufficient conditions for the SISO system (6.2) to be differentially flat, and the parameterization of the system variables as a function of the flat output and its time derivatives up to order n is given by (6.70) and (6.71).

### 6.4 Trajectory Tracking Control

In the first step, assume that the output  $y \in \mathbb{R}$  of the system

$$\dot{\mathbf{x}} = \mathbf{f}(\mathbf{x}) + \mathbf{g}(\mathbf{x})u, \qquad \mathbf{x}(0) = \mathbf{x}_0$$
 (6.72a)

$$y = h(\mathbf{x}) \tag{6.72b}$$

with state  $\mathbf{x} \in \mathbb{R}^n$ , input  $u \in \mathbb{R}$ , smooth vector fields  $\mathbf{f}(\mathbf{x})$  and  $\mathbf{g}(\mathbf{x})$ , and smooth function  $h(\mathbf{x})$  has a relative degree r = n and thus represents a flat output of the system. The trajectory tracking control task now consists of designing a controller so that the output y follows a given sufficiently smooth (at least n times differentiable) reference trajectory  $y_d(t)$ . According to Lemma 6.1, the system (6.72) can be transformed to Byrnes-Isidori normal form

$$\dot{z}_{1} = z_{2}$$

$$\dot{z}_{2} = z_{3}$$

$$\vdots$$

$$\dot{z}_{n} = \mathcal{L}_{\mathbf{f}}^{n} h\left(\boldsymbol{\Phi}^{-1}(\mathbf{z})\right) + \mathcal{L}_{\mathbf{g}} \mathcal{L}_{\mathbf{f}}^{n-1} h\left(\boldsymbol{\Phi}^{-1}(\mathbf{z})\right) u$$

$$y = z_{1}$$

$$(6.73)$$

with the new state

$$\mathbf{z} = \begin{bmatrix} z_1 \\ \vdots \\ z_n \end{bmatrix} = \mathbf{\Phi}(\mathbf{x}) = \begin{bmatrix} h(\mathbf{x}) \\ \mathbf{L}_{\mathbf{f}}h(\mathbf{x}) \\ \vdots \\ \mathbf{L}_{\mathbf{f}}^{n-1}h(\mathbf{x}) \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} y \\ \dot{y} \\ \vdots \\ y^{(n-1)} \end{bmatrix}.$$
(6.74)

Assuming that the entire state  $\mathbf{x}$  can be measured, the control law

$$u = \frac{1}{\mathrm{L}_{\mathbf{g}} \mathrm{L}_{\mathbf{f}}^{n-1} h(\mathbf{x})} \left( y_d^{(n)}(t) - \mathrm{L}_{\mathbf{f}}^n h(\mathbf{x}) - \sum_{j=1}^n a_{j-1} \left( \underbrace{\mathrm{L}_{\mathbf{f}}^{j-1} h(\mathbf{x})}_{\substack{\mathbf{f} \\ \mathbf{f} \\ \mathbf{f}$$

with suitably chosen coefficients  $a_j$ , j = 0, ..., n-1 leads to an exponentially stable error dynamics. Namely, by substituting the control law (6.75) into (6.73), the dynamics of the trajectory error  $z_{1e} = y - y_d$  using (6.74) is given by

$$\underbrace{\begin{bmatrix} \dot{z}_{1e} \\ \vdots \\ \dot{z}_{ne} \end{bmatrix}}_{\mathbf{\dot{z}}_{e}} = \underbrace{\begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 & 0 & \dots & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & \dots & 0 \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \ddots & \vdots \\ 0 & 0 & \dots & 0 & 1 \\ -a_{0} & -a_{1} & \dots & -a_{n-2} & -a_{n-1} \end{bmatrix}}_{\mathbf{A}_{e}} \underbrace{\begin{bmatrix} z_{1e} \\ \vdots \\ z_{ne} \end{bmatrix}}_{\mathbf{z}_{e}}, \quad (6.76)$$

where  $a_j$ , j = 0, ..., n - 1 represent the freely selectable coefficients of the error dynamics matrix  $\mathbf{A}_e$ .

In most practical applications, the entire state is not available for measurement. Therefore, two methods are presented below on how to solve this problem.

#### 6.4.1 Exact feedforward linearization with output stabilization

In the case where no measurements are available at all, a *flatness-based feedforward control*  $u_d(t)$  utilizing the parameterization (6.70) and (6.71) can be designed in the form

$$\mathbf{x}_{d} = \psi_{1} \Big( y_{d}, \dot{y}_{d}, \dots, y_{d}^{(n-1)} \Big) = \mathbf{\Phi}^{-1}(\mathbf{z}_{d}), \qquad \mathbf{z}_{d}^{\mathrm{T}} = \Big[ y_{d}, \dot{y}_{d}, \dots, y_{d}^{(n-1)} \Big] \qquad (6.77a)$$

$$u_{d} = \psi_{2}\left(y_{d}, \dot{y}_{d}, \dots, y_{d}^{(n)}\right) = \frac{y_{d}^{(n)} - \mathcal{L}_{\mathbf{f}}^{n}h(\mathbf{x}_{d})}{\mathcal{L}_{\mathbf{g}}\mathcal{L}_{\mathbf{f}}^{n-1}h(\mathbf{x}_{d})} .$$
(6.77b)

Then, the following theorem holds:

**Theorem 6.3** (Exact feedforward linearization). If the desired reference trajectory  $y_d(t)$  is consistent with the initial conditions  $\mathbf{x}_0$  of the system (6.72), i.e.,  $\mathbf{x}_0 = \psi_1(y_d(0), \dot{y}_d(0), \ldots, y_d^{(n-1)}(0)) = \Phi^{-1}(\mathbf{z}_0)$ , the mathematical model of the plant is exact, there are no parameter variations, and no disturbances act on the system, then the flatness-based control  $u = u_d(t)$  applied to the system (6.72) for all times  $t \ge 0$ 

Lecture Nonlinear Dynamical Systems and Control (SS 2025) ©A. Deutschmann-Olek and A. Kugi, Institut für Automatisierungs- und Regelungstechnik, TU Wien

via the state transformation  $\mathbf{z} = \mathbf{\Phi}(\mathbf{x})$  leads to an identical behavior as the system

$$\dot{z}_i = z_{i+1}, \qquad i = 1, \dots, n-1$$
 (6.78a)

$$\dot{z}_n = y_d^{(n)} \tag{6.78b}$$

with the initial value  $\mathbf{z}(0) = \mathbf{z}_0 = \mathbf{\Phi}(\mathbf{x}_0)$ . The flatness-based control  $u = u_d(t)$  is also referred to as exact feedforward linearization. If the initial conditions are not consistent, but  $\mathbf{x}_0$  is sufficiently close to  $\mathbf{\Phi}^{-1}(\mathbf{z}_0)$ , and the model parameters deviate only slightly from the plant parameters, then the system (flatness-based control (6.77) applied to (6.72))

$$\dot{\mathbf{x}} = \mathbf{f}(\mathbf{x}) + \mathbf{g}(\mathbf{x}) \frac{y_d^{(n)} - \mathcal{L}_{\mathbf{f}}^n h(\mathbf{x}_d)}{\mathcal{L}_{\mathbf{g}} \mathcal{L}_{\mathbf{f}}^{n-1} h(\mathbf{x}_d)}, \qquad \mathbf{x}(0) = \mathbf{x}_0$$
(6.79)

has a unique solution for a finite time interval and remains sufficiently close to the solution of (6.78).

The proof of this theorem is given in the literature provided at the end.

To suppress modeling inaccuracies and disturbances acting on the system, the flatnessbased feedforward control is extended by an output feedback regulator. For this purpose, the control variable u is formulated in the form

$$u = u_d + u_e \tag{6.80}$$

with the feedforward component  $u_d$  and the regulator component  $u_e$ . Assuming that the quantity

$$w = l(\mathbf{x}) \tag{6.81}$$

is available through measurement, one can attempt to stabilize the trajectory error system, for example, by using a PI controller of the form

$$u_e = k_p w_e + k_i \int w_e \, \mathrm{d}t, \qquad w_e = w_d - w, \qquad w_d = l(\mathbf{x}_d)$$
 (6.82)

with suitable controller parameters  $k_p$  and  $k_i$ , and  $\mathbf{x}_d = \psi_1(y_d, \dot{y}_d, \dots, y_d^{(n-1)})$  according to (6.77). The corresponding control structure is depicted as a block diagram in Figure 6.2. This is often referred to in the literature as a *two-degree-of-freedom control structure*.

This approach is commonly used in practice and can be justified by the fact that the flatness-based control  $u_d(t)$  already ensures that the system trajectories  $\mathbf{x}(t)$  (and thus  $w = l(\mathbf{x}(t))$ ) are sufficiently close to the desired trajectories  $\mathbf{x}_d(t)$  (and thus  $w_d = l(\mathbf{x}_d(t))$ ), making a linear controller sufficient to stabilize the error system. By substituting (6.77) and (6.82) into (6.80) and then into (6.73), it is immediately apparent that the trajectory



Figure 6.2: Block diagram of the two-degree-of-freedom control system structure.

error system

$$\dot{z}_{1e} = z_{2e}$$

$$\dot{z}_{2e} = z_{3e}$$

$$\vdots$$

$$\dot{z}_{ne} = \mathbf{L}_{\mathbf{f}}^{n}h(\mathbf{x}) + \mathbf{L}_{\mathbf{g}}\mathbf{L}_{\mathbf{f}}^{n-1}h(\mathbf{x}) \left(\frac{y_{d}^{(n)} - \mathbf{L}_{\mathbf{f}}^{n}h(\mathbf{x}_{d})}{\mathbf{L}_{\mathbf{g}}\mathbf{L}_{\mathbf{f}}^{n-1}h(\mathbf{x}_{d})} + k_{p}(l(\mathbf{x}_{d}) - l(\mathbf{x})) + k_{i}w_{eI}\right) - y_{d}^{(n)}$$

$$\dot{w}_{eI} = l(\mathbf{x}_{d}) - l(\mathbf{x})$$

$$(6.83)$$

with  $\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{\Phi}^{-1}(\mathbf{z}_e + \mathbf{z}_d)$ ,  $\mathbf{x}_d = \mathbf{\Phi}^{-1}(\mathbf{z}_d)$ ,  $z_{je} = z_j - y_d^{(j-1)}(t)$ ,  $j = 1, \ldots, n$ , is nonlinear and time-varying. The stability analysis of the system (6.83) generally proves to be extremely difficult. One possible, not significantly simpler variant, which can also be used for designing the controller parameters  $k_p$  and  $k_i$ , is to linearize the system (6.83) around the desired equilibrium  $\mathbf{z}_e = \mathbf{0}$  and examine the stability of the resulting linear time-varying system.

*Example* 6.5. As an application example, consider the electronic stability program (ESP) of a vehicle. The control strategy is based on the so-called nonlinear single-track model shown in Figure 6.3.

Lecture Nonlinear Dynamical Systems and Control (SS 2025) ©A. Deutschmann-Olek and A. Kugi, Institut für Automatisierungs- und Regelungstechnik, TU Wien


Figure 6.3: Schematic representation of the single-track model.

Thereby, it is assumed that the center of gravity of the vehicle is at road level and thus the forces acting at the center of gravity do not change the wheel loads, allowing the two wheels on the front and rear axles to be combined into single wheels. Furthermore, the entire vehicle is considered as a rigid body, without taking into account pitch and roll movements, and neglecting the vertical dynamics of the vehicle and the wheel dynamics. Denoting  $v_x$  and  $v_y$  as the components of the vehicle velocity v with respect to the body-fixed coordinate system  $0x_0y_0$ , and  $\dot{\psi}$  as the yaw rate (angular velocity around the vertical axis of the vehicle), the equations of motion are given by

$$\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t}v_y = \frac{1}{m}(F_f(\alpha_f)\cos(\delta_f) + F_r(\alpha_r)) - v_x\dot{\psi}$$
(6.84a)

$$\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t}\dot{\psi} = \frac{1}{I_z} (F_f(\alpha_f)l_f \cos(\delta_f) - F_r(\alpha_r)l_r + M_z) .$$
(6.84b)

Here, m represents the total mass of the vehicle,  $I_z$  is the moment of inertia around the vertical axis, and  $l_f$  and  $l_r$  are the distances between the center of gravity and the front and rear axles, respectively. By adjusting the gas and brake pedal positions, the driver sets the longitudinal velocity  $v_x$  of the vehicle, which is subsequently assumed to be constant for controlling the lateral dynamics of the vehicle. Furthermore, the front wheel angle  $\delta_f$  is determined by the steering kinematics based on the steering wheel angle specified by the driver and measured. The lateral forces  $F_f$  and  $F_r$  acting on the tires cause the tires to roll not straight but sideways. The angle between the tire's orientation and its actual motion is called the *slip angle*, and is calculated for the front and rear axles as:

$$\alpha_f = \arctan\left(\frac{v_y + \dot{\psi}l_f}{v_x}\right) - \delta_f \quad \text{und} \quad \alpha_r = \arctan\left(\frac{v_y - \dot{\psi}l_r}{v_x}\right) \,. \tag{6.85}$$

The lateral forces  $F_f$  and  $F_r$  are nonlinear functions of the slip angles  $\alpha_f$  and  $\alpha_r$ ,



Figure 6.4: Tire characteristics (lateral force as a function of slip angle) for different ground conditions.

The yaw moment  $M_z$  serves as a fictitious input into the system, which can be realized by selectively braking individual wheels. Apart from the known steering angle, commercial ESP systems typically measure the yaw rate  $\dot{\psi}$  and the lateral acceleration

$$a_y = \frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t} v_y + v_x \dot{\psi} \ . \tag{6.86}$$

One can easily verify that the lateral velocity  $y = v_y$  represents a possible flat output of the system (6.84) and thus all system variables can be parameterized by yand its time derivatives. Assuming that the steering angle  $\delta_f$  is a sufficiently smooth known time function, the yaw rate  $\dot{\psi}$  can be determined according to (6.84) from the implicit equation

$$m\dot{y} - F_f\left(\arctan\left(\frac{y + \dot{\psi}l_f}{v_x}\right) - \delta_f\right)\cos(\delta_f) - F_r\left(\arctan\left(\frac{y - \dot{\psi}l_r}{v_x}\right)\right) + mv_x\dot{\psi} = 0$$
(6.87)

It should be noted that this implicit equation cannot be solved analytically. As shown in Figure 6.4, the axle characteristics are not monotonically increasing functions of the slip angles, so the solution of the implicit equation (6.87) for the yaw rate  $\dot{\psi}$  is no longer unique outside the linear range. However, this is not a problem as the correct solution can always be determined (numerically). To demonstrate this, consider initially the linear range of the axle characteristics, i.e.,

$$F_f(\alpha_f) = -c_f\left(\left(\frac{y + \dot{\psi}l_f}{v_x}\right) - \delta_f\right) \quad \text{und} \quad F_r(\alpha_r) = -c_r\left(\frac{y - \dot{\psi}l_r}{v_x}\right) \tag{6.88}$$

with stiffness coefficients  $c_f, c_r > 0$  for small steering angles  $\delta_f$ . Substituting (6.88) into (6.87), one obtains, with  $\cos(\delta_f) \approx 1$ , the unique solution for  $\dot{\psi}$  in the linear range as

$$\dot{\psi} = \frac{v_x \delta_f c_f - (c_f + c_r) y - m \dot{y} v_x}{c_f l_f - c_r l_r + m v_x^2} .$$
(6.89)

Since both the steering angle  $\delta_f$  and y and  $\dot{y}$  are continuous,  $\dot{\psi}$  must also be continuous. Furthermore, it is known that at the beginning of each journey, the vehicle is in the linear range of the axle characteristics, which is why a unique solution, as in (6.89), exists. These points now motivate the following strategy. The implicit equation (6.87) is solved in each sampling step, and in case of multiple solutions, the solution closest to the previous sampling step is always chosen. This shows that a parameterization of the yaw rate in the form  $\dot{\psi} = \chi_1(y, \dot{y}, \delta_f)$  is given. The parameterization of the control input  $M_z$  is obtained from the second equation of (6.84)

$$M_z = I_z \ddot{\psi} - (F_f(\alpha_f) l_f \cos(\delta_f) - F_r(\alpha_r) l_r)$$
(6.90)

and by calculating  $\ddot{\psi} = \chi_2(y, \dot{y}, \ddot{y}, \delta_f, \dot{\delta}_f) = \chi_{2N}/\chi_{2D}$  from the time-differentiated equation (6.87)

$$m\ddot{y} - \frac{\partial}{\partial\alpha_f} F_f(\alpha_f) \left( \frac{\left(\dot{y} + \ddot{\psi}l_f\right) v_x}{v_x^2 + \left(y + \dot{\psi}l_f\right)^2} - \dot{\delta}_f \right) \cos(\delta_f) + F_f(\alpha_f) \sin(\delta_f) \dot{\delta}_f$$
  
$$- \frac{\partial}{\partial\alpha_r} F_r(\alpha_r) \left( \frac{\left(\dot{y} - \ddot{\psi}l_r\right) v_x}{v_x^2 + \left(y - \dot{\psi}l_r\right)^2} \right) + mv_x \ddot{\psi} = 0$$
(6.91a)

with

$$\chi_{2N} = \frac{\partial}{\partial \alpha_f} F_f(\alpha_f) \left( \dot{\delta}_f - \frac{\dot{y}v_x}{v_x^2 + (y + \dot{\psi}l_f)^2} \right) \cos(\delta_f) + m\ddot{y} + F_f(\alpha_f) \sin(\delta_f) \dot{\delta}_f - \frac{\partial}{\partial \alpha_r} F_r(\alpha_r) \left( \frac{\dot{y}v_x}{v_x^2 + (y - \dot{\psi}l_r)^2} \right) ,$$

$$\chi_{2D} = \frac{\partial}{\partial \alpha_f} F_f(\alpha_f) \left( \frac{l_f v_x}{v_x^2 + (y + \dot{\psi}l_f)^2} \right) \cos(\delta_f) + \frac{\partial}{\partial \alpha_r} F_r(\alpha_r) \left( \frac{l_r v_x}{v_x^2 + (y - \dot{\psi}l_r)^2} \right) - mv_x .$$
(6.91b)
$$(6.91c)$$

This example nicely illustrates that in flatness-based control design, it is not necessarily required to explicitly specify the parameterization.

The control concept is based on the two-degree-of-freedom control loop structure shown in Figure 6.2. In a reference model, a desired trajectory  $y_d = v_{y,d}$  of lateral velocity  $y = v_y$  is calculated based on the driver's specifications, which is at least twice continuously differentiable. Using the flatness-based parameterization of the control input (6.90) - (6.91), a control law of the form

$$M_{z,d} = I_z \underbrace{\chi_2\left(y_d, \dot{y}_d, \ddot{y}_d, \delta_f, \dot{\delta}_f\right)}_{\ddot{\psi}_d} - \left(F_f(\alpha_{f,d})l_f \cos(\delta_f) - F_r(\alpha_{r,d})l_r\right) \tag{6.92a}$$

with

$$\alpha_{f,d} = \arctan\left(\frac{\underbrace{y_d + \chi_1(y_d, \dot{y}_d, \delta_f)l_f}{v_x}}{v_x}\right), \tag{6.92b}$$

$$\alpha_{r,d} = \arctan\left(\frac{\underbrace{y_d - \chi_1(y_d, \dot{y}_d, \delta_f)l_f}{v_x}}{v_x}\right) \tag{6.92c}$$

is then determined. The stabilization of the trajectory error system is achieved through the time derivative of lateral velocity

$$\dot{v}_y = a_y - v_x \dot{\psi} , \qquad (6.93)$$

since this can be directly calculated from the measured lateral acceleration  $a_y$  and yaw rate  $\dot{\psi}$ .

In the present case, a simple PI controller of the form

$$M_{z,e} = k_p(\dot{v}_y - \dot{v}_{y,d}) + k_i \int (\dot{v}_y - \dot{v}_{y,d}) \,\mathrm{d}t \tag{6.94}$$

with appropriately chosen controller parameters  $k_p$  and  $k_i$  is used. The yaw moment  $M_z$  to be realized for lateral dynamics control is now composed additively of two components:  $M_{z,d}$  according to (6.92a) and  $M_{z,e}$  according to (6.94), i.e.  $M_z = M_{z,d} + M_{z,e}$ .

## 6.4.2 Exact Input-State Linearisation with State Observer

Another way to circumvent the problem of incomplete state information accessible via measurements is to construct a *state observer* for the unmeasurable states. Assuming

Lecture Nonlinear Dynamical Systems and Control (SS 2025) ©A. Deutschmann-Olek and A. Kugi, Institut für Automatisierungs- und Regelungstechnik, TU Wien

that the only measurements  $w = l(\mathbf{x})$  are available for the system

$$\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t}\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{f}(\mathbf{x}) + \mathbf{g}(\mathbf{x})u, \qquad \mathbf{x}(0) = \mathbf{x}_0$$
(6.95a)

$$w = l(\mathbf{x}) , \qquad (6.95b)$$

a state observer can be implemented in the form

$$\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t}\mathbf{\hat{x}} = \mathbf{f}(\mathbf{\hat{x}}) + \mathbf{g}(\mathbf{\hat{x}})u - \mathbf{\hat{k}}(t)(w - \hat{w}), \qquad \mathbf{\hat{x}}(0) = \mathbf{\hat{x}}_0$$
(6.96a)

$$\hat{w} = l(\hat{\mathbf{x}}) \tag{6.96b}$$

with the estimated state  $\hat{\mathbf{x}}$  and the time-varying observer gain  $\hat{\mathbf{k}}(t)$  to be determined. A state controller according to (6.75) can then be utilized with  $\mathbf{x}$  replaced by  $\hat{\mathbf{x}}$ , i.e.,

$$u = \hat{u} = \frac{1}{\mathrm{L}_{\mathbf{g}} \mathrm{L}_{\mathbf{f}}^{n-1} h(\hat{\mathbf{x}})} \left( y_d^{(n)}(t) - \mathrm{L}_{\mathbf{f}}^n h(\hat{\mathbf{x}}) - \sum_{j=1}^n a_{j-1} \left( \mathrm{L}_{\mathbf{f}}^{j-1} h(\hat{\mathbf{x}}) - y_d^{(j-1)}(t) \right) \right) .$$
(6.97)

From (6.95) and (6.96), it is immediately apparent that the observer error dynamics  $\tilde{\mathbf{x}} = \mathbf{x} - \hat{\mathbf{x}}$  become

$$\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t}\tilde{\mathbf{x}} = \mathbf{f}(\tilde{\mathbf{x}} + \hat{\mathbf{x}}) - \mathbf{f}(\hat{\mathbf{x}}) + (\mathbf{g}(\tilde{\mathbf{x}} + \hat{\mathbf{x}}) - \mathbf{g}(\hat{\mathbf{x}}))u + \hat{\mathbf{k}}(t)(l(\tilde{\mathbf{x}} + \hat{\mathbf{x}}) - l(\hat{\mathbf{x}})),$$
  
$$\tilde{\mathbf{x}}(0) = \mathbf{x}_0 - \hat{\mathbf{x}}_0$$
(6.98)

with  $u = \hat{u}(t, \hat{\mathbf{x}})$  from (6.97). Assuming that the state  $\mathbf{x}$  and the estimated state  $\hat{\mathbf{x}}$  are close to the desired trajectory  $\mathbf{x}_d$  (see also (6.77)), the system (6.96) - (6.98) can be linearized around  $\hat{\mathbf{x}} = \mathbf{0}$  and  $\hat{\mathbf{x}} = \mathbf{x}_d$ 

$$\begin{bmatrix} \frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t} \Delta \hat{\mathbf{x}} \\ \frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t} \Delta \tilde{\mathbf{x}} \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{A}_{11}(t) & -\hat{\mathbf{k}}(t)\mathbf{c}^{\mathrm{T}}(t) \\ \mathbf{A}_{21}(t) & \mathbf{A}_{22}(t) + \hat{\mathbf{k}}(t)\mathbf{c}^{\mathrm{T}}(t) \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} \Delta \hat{\mathbf{x}} \\ \Delta \tilde{\mathbf{x}} \end{bmatrix}$$
(6.99a)

with

$$\mathbf{A}_{11}(t) = \frac{\partial}{\partial \mathbf{\hat{x}}} (\mathbf{f}(\mathbf{\hat{x}}) + \mathbf{g}(\mathbf{\hat{x}})\hat{u})|_{\mathbf{\hat{x}}=\mathbf{x}_d} - \mathbf{\hat{k}}(t) \underbrace{\left(\frac{\partial}{\partial \mathbf{\hat{x}}} l(\mathbf{\tilde{x}} + \mathbf{\hat{x}}) - \frac{\partial}{\partial \mathbf{\hat{x}}} l(\mathbf{\hat{x}})\right)\Big|_{\mathbf{\hat{x}}=\mathbf{x}_d, \ \mathbf{\tilde{x}}=\mathbf{0}}}_{=\mathbf{0}}, \quad (6.99b)$$

$$\mathbf{c}^{\mathrm{T}}(t) = \left. \frac{\partial}{\partial \tilde{\mathbf{x}}} l(\tilde{\mathbf{x}} + \hat{\mathbf{x}}) \right|_{\hat{\mathbf{x}} = \mathbf{x}_d, \ \tilde{\mathbf{x}} = \mathbf{0}},\tag{6.99c}$$

Lecture Nonlinear Dynamical Systems and Control (SS 2025) ©A. Deutschmann-Olek and A. Kugi, Institut für Automatisierungs- und Regelungstechnik, TU Wien

and

$$\mathbf{A}_{21}(t) = \underbrace{\left(\frac{\partial}{\partial \hat{\mathbf{x}}}(\mathbf{f}(\tilde{\mathbf{x}} + \hat{\mathbf{x}}) - \mathbf{f}(\hat{\mathbf{x}}))\right)}_{=0}\Big|_{\hat{\mathbf{x}}=\mathbf{x}_d, \tilde{\mathbf{x}}=\mathbf{0}}}_{=0} \\ + \underbrace{\left(\frac{\partial}{\partial \hat{\mathbf{x}}}(\mathbf{g}(\tilde{\mathbf{x}} + \hat{\mathbf{x}}) - \mathbf{g}(\hat{\mathbf{x}}))\right)\hat{u}\Big|_{\hat{\mathbf{x}}=\mathbf{x}_d, \tilde{\mathbf{x}}=\mathbf{0}}}_{=0} \\ + \underbrace{\left(\mathbf{g}(\tilde{\mathbf{x}} + \hat{\mathbf{x}}) - \mathbf{g}(\hat{\mathbf{x}})\right)\frac{\partial}{\partial \hat{\mathbf{x}}}\hat{u}\Big|_{\hat{\mathbf{x}}=\mathbf{x}_d, \tilde{\mathbf{x}}=\mathbf{0}}}_{=0} \\ + \widehat{\mathbf{k}}(t)\underbrace{\frac{\partial}{\partial \hat{\mathbf{x}}}(l(\tilde{\mathbf{x}} + \hat{\mathbf{x}}) - l(\hat{\mathbf{x}}))\Big|_{\hat{\mathbf{x}}=\mathbf{x}_d, \tilde{\mathbf{x}}=\mathbf{0}}}_{=0} \\ = \mathbf{0}, \\ \mathbf{A}_{22}(t) = \frac{\partial}{\partial \tilde{\mathbf{x}}}(\mathbf{f}(\tilde{\mathbf{x}} + \hat{\mathbf{x}}) + \mathbf{g}(\tilde{\mathbf{x}} + \hat{\mathbf{x}})\hat{u})\Big|_{\hat{\mathbf{x}}=\mathbf{x}_d, \tilde{\mathbf{x}}=\mathbf{0}}}. \tag{6.99e}$$

Evidently, the linearized closed loop system (6.99a) is of triangular structure. As shown at the beginning of this section (cf. (6.72) - (6.76)), the control law  $u = \hat{u}$  according to (6.97) applied to the system

$$\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t}\mathbf{\hat{x}} = \mathbf{f}(\mathbf{\hat{x}}) + \mathbf{g}(\mathbf{\hat{x}})u \tag{6.100}$$

results in an exponentially stable trajectory error system for  $\mathbf{\hat{x}}_e = \mathbf{\hat{x}} - \mathbf{x}_d$ . Note that simply replacing  $\mathbf{x}$  with  $\mathbf{\hat{x}}$  and u with  $\hat{u}$  in the derivations from (6.72) - (6.76) leads to the conclusion that the subsystem

$$\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t}\Delta\hat{\mathbf{x}} = \mathbf{A}_{11}(t)\Delta\hat{\mathbf{x}} \tag{6.101}$$

of the linearized system (6.99a) is also exponentially stable.

For the subsystem

$$\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t}\Delta\tilde{\mathbf{x}} = \left(\mathbf{A}_{22}(t) + \hat{\mathbf{k}}(t)\mathbf{c}^{\mathrm{T}}(t)\right)\Delta\tilde{\mathbf{x}}$$
(6.102)

assuming that the pair  $(\mathbf{c}^{\mathrm{T}}(t), \mathbf{A}_{22}(t))$  is observable, the time-varying observer gain  $\mathbf{\hat{k}}(t)$  can be chosen, for example, using the Ackermann formula for linear time-varying systems in such a way that the eigenvalues of  $\mathbf{A}_{22}(t) + \mathbf{\hat{k}}(t)\mathbf{c}^{\mathrm{T}}(t)$  are located at specified locations. For the calculation of observers for linear time-varying systems, refer to the appendix B. Figure 6.5 shows a structural diagram of the exact input-state linearization with controller-observer structure.

*Example* 6.6. Figure 6.6 shows a simple example of a magnetic bearing.

Lecture Nonlinear Dynamical Systems and Control (SS 2025) ©A. Deutschmann-Olek and A. Kugi, Institut für Automatisierungs- und Regelungstechnik, TU Wien



Figure 6.5: Block diagram of the exact input-state linearization with state observer.



Figure 6.6: Schematic representation of the magnetic bearing.

The corresponding mathematical model is

$$\dot{x}_1 = x_2$$
 (6.103a)

$$\dot{x}_2 = \frac{k_1}{m} \left(\frac{i}{k_2 - x_1}\right)^2 - g - \frac{\tau_l}{m}$$
 (6.103b)

with the two state variables position  $x_1$  and velocity  $x_2$  of the moving ball with mass m, gravitational constant g, and an external disturbance force  $\tau_l$ .

Furthermore, it is assumed that the input *i* corresponds to the coil current ensured by an underlying controller, and  $k_1$  and  $k_2$  are constant positive parameters for modeling the magnetic force. The control task now is to follow a sufficiently smooth trajectory  $x_d(t)$  in the position  $x_1$ .

*Exercise* 6.5. Show that the position  $x_1$  of mass m represents a flat output  $y = h(\mathbf{x}) = x_1$  of the system.

Lecture Nonlinear Dynamical Systems and Control (SS 2025) @A. Deutschmann-Olek and A. Kugi, Institut für Automatisierungs- und Regelungstechnik, TU Wien

$$x_1 = y \tag{6.104a}$$

$$x_2 = \dot{y} \tag{6.104b}$$

$$i = (k_2 - y)\sqrt{\frac{m}{k_1}(\ddot{y} + g)}$$
 (6.104c)

by the flat output y and its time derivatives.

As a measured variable w, only the position  $x_1$  is available, and it is assumed that the velocity  $x_2$  cannot be sensibly determined by approximate differentiation due to the heavily noisy position measurement signal. For the controller design, the disturbance force  $\tau_l$  is considered as an unknown but constant parameter that satisfies the differential equation (disturbance model)

$$\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t}\tau_l = 0 \tag{6.105}$$

Introducing a new input variable

$$u = i^2 \tag{6.106}$$

allows the direct application of the control law (6.97) for

$$\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t} \underbrace{\begin{bmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \end{bmatrix}}_{\mathbf{x}} = \underbrace{\begin{bmatrix} x_2 \\ -g - \frac{\tau_1}{m} \end{bmatrix}}_{\mathbf{f}(\mathbf{x})} + \underbrace{\begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ \frac{k_1}{m(k_2 - x_1)^2} \end{bmatrix}}_{\mathbf{g}(\mathbf{x})} u, \quad \mathbf{x}(0) = \mathbf{x}_0 \quad (6.107\mathrm{a})$$

$$y = h(\mathbf{x}) = x_1$$
 (6.107b)

$$w = l(\mathbf{x}) = x_1 \tag{6.107c}$$

and one obtains

$$u = \hat{u} = \frac{1}{\mathrm{L}_{\mathbf{g}}\mathrm{L}_{\mathbf{f}}h(\hat{\mathbf{x}})} \left( \ddot{y}_{d}(t) - \mathrm{L}_{\mathbf{f}}^{2}h(\hat{\mathbf{x}}) - \sum_{j=1}^{2} a_{j-1} \left( \mathrm{L}_{\mathbf{f}}^{j-1}h(\hat{\mathbf{x}}) - y_{d}^{(j-1)}(t) \right) \right)$$

$$= \frac{m(k_{2} - \hat{x}_{1})^{2}}{k_{1}} \left( \ddot{y}_{d}(t) + g + \frac{\hat{\tau}_{l}}{m} - a_{0}(\hat{x}_{1} - y_{d}) - a_{1}(\hat{x}_{2} - \dot{y}_{d}) \right)$$
(6.108)

with suitably chosen controller parameters  $a_0$  and  $a_1$  as well as the estimates  $\hat{\tau}_l$ ,  $\hat{x}_1$ , and  $\hat{x}_2$  of  $\tau_l$ ,  $x_1$ , and  $x_2$ . Note that considering (6.106), the actual manipulated variable *i* becomes  $i = \sqrt{u}$ . The state observer for the system (6.107) extended by

the disturbance model (6.105) reads according to (6.96)

$$\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t} \underbrace{ \begin{bmatrix} \hat{x}_1 \\ \hat{x}_2 \\ \hat{\tau}_l \end{bmatrix}}_{\hat{\mathbf{x}}_a} = \underbrace{ \begin{bmatrix} \hat{x}_2 \\ -g - \frac{\hat{\tau}_l}{m} \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}}_{\mathbf{f}_a(\hat{\mathbf{x}}_a)} + \underbrace{ \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ \frac{k_1}{m(k_2 - \hat{x}_1)^2} \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}}_{\mathbf{g}_a(\hat{\mathbf{x}}_a)} \hat{u} - \hat{\mathbf{k}}(t)(x_1 - \hat{x}_1)$$
(6.109a)

$$\hat{y} = h_a(\hat{\mathbf{x}}_a) = \hat{x}_1$$
(6.109b)
  
 $\hat{w} = l_a(\hat{\mathbf{x}}_a) = \hat{x}_1$ 
(6.109c)

with

$$\hat{x}_{1}(0) = \hat{x}_{10} 
\hat{x}_{2}(0) = \hat{x}_{20} 
\hat{\tau}_{l}(0) = \hat{\tau}_{l0}$$
(6.109d)

with the state vector  $\mathbf{x}_a$  extended by the state  $\hat{\tau}_l$ . For the design of the time-varying observer gain  $\hat{\mathbf{k}}(t)$ , the Ackermann formula for linear time-varying systems is used according to Theorem B.2. By linearizing around the desired trajectory  $x_{1d} = y_d$ ,  $x_{2d} = \dot{y}_d$ , and  $\tau_{ld} = 0$  (see 6.104), the relevant quantities for the observer design (cf. (6.102)) are obtained as

$$\mathbf{A}_{a,22}(t) = \left. \frac{\partial}{\partial \tilde{\mathbf{x}}_a} (\mathbf{f}_a(\tilde{\mathbf{x}}_a + \hat{\mathbf{x}}_a) + \mathbf{g}_a(\tilde{\mathbf{x}}_a + \hat{\mathbf{x}}_a)\hat{u}) \right|_{\hat{\mathbf{x}}_a = \mathbf{x}_{a,d}, \ \tilde{\mathbf{x}}_a = \mathbf{0}}$$
(6.110a)

$$\mathbf{c}_{a}^{\mathrm{T}}(t) = \left. \frac{\partial}{\partial \tilde{\mathbf{x}}_{a}} l_{a}(\tilde{\mathbf{x}}_{a} + \hat{\mathbf{x}}_{a}) \right|_{\hat{\mathbf{x}}_{a} = \mathbf{x}_{a,d}, \ \tilde{\mathbf{x}}_{a} = \mathbf{0}}$$
(6.110b)

with

.

$$\mathbf{A}_{a,22}(t) = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 & 0\\ \frac{2}{(k_2 - y_d)} (\ddot{y}_d(t) + g) & 0 & \frac{-1}{m}\\ 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}, \qquad \mathbf{c}_a(t) = \begin{bmatrix} 1\\ 0\\ 0 \end{bmatrix}.$$
(6.110c)

It can be easily verified that the pair  $(\mathbf{c}_a^{\mathrm{T}}(t), \mathbf{A}_{a,22}(t))$  is uniformly observable according to Definition B.2, as the rank of the observability matrix

$$\mathcal{O}\left(\mathbf{c}_{a}^{\mathrm{T}}(t), \mathbf{A}_{a,22}(t)\right) = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0\\ 0 & 1 & 0\\ \frac{2}{(k_{2}-y_{d})}(\ddot{y}_{d}(t)+g) & 0 & \frac{-1}{m} \end{bmatrix}$$
(6.111)

is 3 for all times  $t \ge t_0$ . The time-varying observer gain  $\hat{\mathbf{k}}(t)$  is then directly obtained from the Ackermann formula according to Theorem B.2 for a suitably chosen characteristic polynomial  $s^3 + p_2 s^2 + p_1 s + p_0$ .

*Exercise* 6.7. The theory presented so far is to be applied to the laboratory experiment Ball-on-Wheel shown in Figure 6.7. This laboratory experiment essentially consists of a wheel (radius  $r_w$ , moment of inertia about the z-axis  $I_w$ , rotation angle  $\varphi_w$ , angular velocity  $\omega_w$ ) on which a ball (radius  $r_b$ , mass  $m_b$ , moment of inertia about the z-axis  $I_b$ , rotation angle  $\varphi_b$ , angular velocity  $\omega_b$ ) is balanced. The input to the system is the torque M on the wheel.



Figure 6.7: Schematic representation of the laboratory experiment Ball-on-Wheel.

When modeling the ball, assume that it is given in the form of a solid sphere with radius  $r_b$  and mass  $m_b$ , i.e., it holds

$$I_b = \frac{2}{5}m_b r_b^2 \tag{6.112}$$

Solve the following subtasks:

• Calculate the mathematical model of this system using the Lagrange formalism. Then represent the system in the form

$$\dot{\mathbf{x}} = \mathbf{f}(\mathbf{x}) + \mathbf{g}(\mathbf{x})u \tag{6.113}$$

with the state  $\mathbf{x} = [\varphi_w, \varphi_r, \omega_w, \omega_r]^{\mathrm{T}}$  and the input u = M. Implement the system in MATLAB/SIMULINK.

- Calculate all equilibrium points of the system and linearize the system around a physically meaningful equilibrium point. What statements can you make about the stability and reachability of the linearized system?
- Calculate the relative degree of the outputs  $y_1 = \varphi_w$ ,  $y_2 = \varphi_r$ ,  $y_3 = \omega_w$ , and  $y_4 = \omega_r$ . Then check if an exact input-state linearization is feasible for this system.
- Show that the system is differentially flat and calculate a flat output y in general.

Name		Value
Radius Wheel	$r_w$	$269 \mathrm{~mm}$
Radius Ball	$r_b$	$68.3 \mathrm{~mm}$
Moment of Inertia Wheel	$I_w$	$0.156 \ \mathrm{kgm^2}$
Mass Ball	$m_b$	$0.197 \mathrm{~kg}$
Gravitational Constant	g	$9.81 \mathrm{~m/s^2}$

Table 6.1: Parameters of the laboratory experiment Ball-on-Wheel.

Choose for the flat output

$$y = \varphi_w - \frac{1}{2} \frac{7(r_w + r_b)\varphi_r}{r_w} \tag{6.114}$$

and calculate the state and input transformations to Brunovsky normal form. Then extend the control law with appropriate terms so that the eigenvalues of the closed transformed loop lie at  $\{\gamma_1, \gamma_2, \gamma_3, \gamma_4\}$ . Choose suitable eigenvalues and test the designed nonlinear controller by simulation in MATLAB/SIMULINK using the parameters from Table 6.1.

## 6.4.3 Trajectory Tracking Control for a Non-Flat Output

In the first step, consider the system (6.95) and assume that y represents a flat output of the system. According to (6.70) and (6.71), it is then possible to parameterize all system variables (state  $\mathbf{x}$  and input u) through the flat output y and its time derivatives, namely

$$\mathbf{x} = \boldsymbol{\psi}_1 \left( y, \dot{y}, \dots, y^{(n-1)} \right) = \mathbf{\Phi}^{-1}(\mathbf{z}), \qquad \mathbf{z}^{\mathrm{T}} = \left[ y, \dot{y}, \dots, y^{(n-1)} \right]$$
(6.115a)

$$u = \psi_2(y, \dot{y}, \dots, y^{(n)}) = \frac{y^{(n)} - \mathcal{L}_{\mathbf{f}}^n h(\mathbf{\Phi}^{-1}(\mathbf{z}))}{\mathcal{L}_{\mathbf{g}} \mathcal{L}_{\mathbf{f}}^{n-1} h(\mathbf{\Phi}^{-1}(\mathbf{z}))} .$$
(6.115b)

Lecture Nonlinear Dynamical Systems and Control (SS 2025) ©A. Deutschmann-Olek and A. Kugi, Institut für Automatisierungs- und Regelungstechnik, TU Wien